This electronic thesis or dissertation has been downloaded from the King’s Research Portal at https://kclpure.kcl.ac.uk/portal/

**Studies of the hindbrain roof plate organiser in the chick embryo**

Broom, Emma Ruth

*Awarding institution:*  
King’s College London

The copyright of this thesis rests with the author and no quotation from it or information derived from it may be published without proper acknowledgement.

**END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT**

Unless another licence is stated on the immediately following page this work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International licence. https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/

You are free to copy, distribute and transmit the work

Under the following conditions:

- **Attribution**: You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work).
- **Non Commercial**: You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- **No Derivative Works**: You may not alter, transform, or build upon this work.

Any of these conditions can be waived if you receive permission from the author. Your fair dealings and other rights are in no way affected by the above.

**Take down policy**

If you believe that this document breaches copyright please contact librarypure@kcl.ac.uk providing details, and we will remove access to the work immediately and investigate your claim.
**Title:** Studies of the hindbrain roof plate organiser in the chick embryo

**Author:** Emma Ruth Broom

The copyright of this thesis rests with the author and no quotation from it or information derived from it may be published without proper acknowledgement.

---

**END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**

This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivs 3.0 Unported License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/3.0/

You are free to:
- Share: to copy, distribute and transmit the work

Under the following conditions:
- Attribution: You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work).
- Non Commercial: You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- No Derivative Works - You may not alter, transform, or build upon this work.

Any of these conditions can be waived if you receive permission from the author. Your fair dealings and other rights are in no way affected by the above.

---

**Take down policy**

If you believe that this document breaches copyright please contact librarypure@kcl.ac.uk providing details, and we will remove access to the work immediately and investigate your claim.
Studies of the hindbrain roof plate organiser in the chick embryo

Emma Ruth Broom

MRC Centre for Developmental Neurobiology,

King’s College, London

Thesis submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD)

September 2011
Abstract

Organisers are specialised groups of cells that non-autonomously pattern adjacent cell populations. The dorsal midline, or roof plate, of the developing CNS is one such organiser and is required for the specification of specific subtypes of dorsal neurons. Organisers often comprise boundaries between molecularly distinguishable compartments, however the roof plate does not fit with this model; for the most part it constitutes a narrow strip of cells that separate two molecularly indistinguishable compartments (the two halves of the neural tube), but at certain anteroposterior locations, such as the hindbrain, it is expanded to form a thin epithelium that tents over a ventricle. Using chick embryos, I have investigated a hypothesis that reconciles the roof plate with this emergent model, in which the organiser properties of the roof plate are invested in its boundaries. Using in vitro co-culture, I show that the $gdf7$-positive roof plate boundary and its signalling properties can be regenerated in roof plate-derived tissue at the interface between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium. Further, this $gdf7$-positive boundary is required for the expression of $cath1$, which marks the dorsal-most pool of neural progenitors in the hindbrain. Many organisers require Notch signalling and downstream Hairy/Enhancer of split (Hes) transcription factors for their formation or maintenance. Using electroporation of the hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium boundary, I find that Delta-Notch signalling is sufficient to convert cells from a roof plate epithelial to a roof plate boundary fate. Further, correct levels of expression of $chairy2$ (a $hes1$ homologue) are required for the maintenance of the roof plate boundary. Finally, I show that the roof plate boundary is a bidirectional signalling centre that not only patterns adjacent neuroepithelium, but is also required for the differentiation of choroid plexus epithelium from roof plate epithelium.
Acknowledgements

Thanks must go to my supervisor, Richard for inspiring me with the idea of the project and for all the discussions and never-ending ideas along the way. Thank you to all other members of the Wingate-Bell conglomerate (Mary, Tracky Butts, Leigh, Laura, Tom and Esther) for all the bowling, rounders, cake and support (both scientific and in terms of keeping me sane!). Thank you to all other members of the Tea and Crossword Club; Megan, Kate, Peter, Liam, Oniz, Ellen and Bekah – you made the office such a fun place to be. Thanks must go to Alessio for his help and cloning guidance, to Jon Gilthorpe for the original *chairy2* construct, and to all the past and present attendees of the Lumsden group meetings, who gave me so many useful comments and advice. The MRC Centre has been such a great place to work for the past four years so I must thank everyone I’ve met here who have made it such a fun and collaborative environment. Thank you also to Sophie, Rachel and Sarah for experiencing the highs and lows with me from day one. Lastly, thank you so much Martin for putting up with me whilst in my thesis-writing mode and my parents for all their support and comfort cooking.
# Table of Contents

Table of Contents........................................................................................................................................... 3

Chapter 1 Introduction ........................................................................................................................................ 9

1.1 Organisers in the developing central nervous system.................................................................................... 10

1.1.1 Anteroposterior patterning ......................................................................................................................... 10

1.1.2 Dorsoventral patterning ............................................................................................................................... 13

1.1.2.1 Ventralising signals ............................................................................................................................... 13

1.1.2.2 Dorsalising signals ............................................................................................................................... 15

1.1.2.3 The roof plate is an organiser ............................................................................................................... 20

1.1.2.4 The roof plate and dorsal patterning of the hindbrain ........................................................................... 22

1.1.2.5 The roof plate and dorsal patterning of the diencephalon ................................................................. 26

1.1.2.6 The roof plate and dorsal patterning of the telencephalon ................................................................. 26

1.1.3 Properties of secondary organisers ............................................................................................................. 27

1.1.3.1 Lineage restriction ............................................................................................................................... 28

1.1.3.2 Specialisations of cells, their organisation and rate of proliferation .............................................. 28

1.1.3.3 Signalling across the boundary from adjacent compartments enables boundary formation and maintenance ................................................................................................................................. 29

1.1.3.4 Hes transcription factors ....................................................................................................................... 34

1.2 Choroid plexus development ........................................................................................................................ 35

1.2.1 Coordination of choroid plexus development ........................................................................................... 38

1.3 Re-examining the organiser properties of the roof plate ............................................................................... 39

Chapter 2 A study of gene expression patterns at the hindbrain roof plate boundary ...................................... 41

2.1 Background .................................................................................................................................................... 41

2.2 Results ......................................................................................................................................................... 44
2.2.1 *gdf7* expression marks the boundaries between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium in chick................................................................. 44

2.2.2 Expression of *bmp4, bmp7* and *wnt1* at the hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium boundary ................................................................. 47

2.2.3 The chick *hes1* orthologues, *chairy1* and *chairy2* are persistently expressed at high levels at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary............ 51

2.2.4 Expression of Notch receptors, ligands and downstream targets at the roof plate boundary .............................................................................................................. 57

2.2.5 The expression of hindbrain roof plate epithelium and choroid plexus epithelium markers from E3 – E7 ............................................................................. 60

2.3 Discussion ...................................................................................................................... 67

2.3.1 Choroid plexus epithelium development in chick................................................ 67

2.3.2 The presence of Notch ligands, receptors and downstream targets at the roof plate boundary suggests a role for Notch signalling across this boundary ............. 70

2.3.3 *gdf7* is a specific marker of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary in developing chick embryos ..................................................... 72

Chapter 3 Tissue interactions and the maintenance of the *gdf7* – positive organiser .... 74

3.1 Background .................................................................................................................. 74

3.1.1 Experimental approach .......................................................................................... 75

3.2 Results ......................................................................................................................... 76

3.2.1 *gdf7* is induced at a roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium boundary
*in vivo* ............................................................................................................................. 76

3.2.2 *gdf7* and *cathl* are induced at a roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium interface in co-culture ........................................................................ 76

3.2.3 *gdf7* is induced in roof plate epithelium- derived cells and *cathl* is induced in hindbrain neuroepithelium- derived cells in co-cultures ........................................ 86

3.2.4 *gdf7* is not induced at the interface between roof plate epithelium and roof plate epithelium ................................................................................................. 86
3.2.5 *gdf7* is induced at the interface between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and spinal cord neuroepithelium ................................................................. 89

3.2.6 The roof plate is required to maintain the expression of *cath1* in the adjacent rhombic lip.................................................................................. 89

3.2.7 *cath1* can be induced in ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium via an interaction with roof plate epithelium in co-cultures derived from E4 and E5 brains, but not from E6 brains..................................................................................................... 98

3.2.8 *chairy2* but not *chairy1* is induced in the roof plate epithelium at a roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium interface.................................................. 104

3.3 Discussion.......................................................................................................................... 110

3.3.1 The pattern of *gdf7* induction in tissue recombinations suggests an interaction between a neural ligand and a roof plate receptor........................................... 110

3.3.2 *cath1* expression in the rhombic lip is maintained by roof plate signals likely to derive specifically from the *gdf7*-domain.................................................. 111

3.3.3 The induced *gdf7*-domain represents an induced organiser............................... 112

3.3.4 Conclusions.................................................................................................................. 113

Chapter 4 Notch signalling and the maintenance of the roof plate boundary-organiser..... 115

4.1 Background.................................................................................................................... 115

4.2 Results........................................................................................................................ 118

4.2.1 Co-electroporation of 1:1 RCAS-*delta1*: CAβ-GFP constructs ...................... 118

4.2.2 Ectopic expression of *delta1* in the roof plate epithelium induces *gdf7* expression ............................................................................................................. 121

4.2.3 Ectopic *delta1* expression in the roof plate epithelium induces *chairy2* expression ............................................................................................................. 123

4.2.4 Ectopic *delta1* expression in the roof plate epithelium causes upregulation of *cyp26C1* expression within the electroporation domain.............................. 123

4.2.5 Ectopic expression of *delta1* in the roof plate epithelium induces *gdf7* expression but causes a downregulation of *ttr* expression................................. 126
4.2.6 Expression of truncated cHairy2 at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary results in a loss of *gdf7* and *cath1* expression....................... 126

4.2.7 Electroporation with the *chairy2ΔWRPW* expression construct causes cell death within the electroporated domain................................................................. 129

4.2.8 Cloning and electroporation of a new *chairy2ΔWRPW* and a full length *chairy2* expression construct.......................................................................................... 134

4.2.9 Overexpression of *chairy2ΔWRPW* or full length *chairy2* at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary causes a non-autonomous loss of roof plate epithelium- expressed *cyp26C1* ................................................................. 140

4.2.10 The effects on *gdf7* and adjacent *ttr* expression of electroporation of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with *chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5* or *chairy2-IRESeGFPm5* .................................................. 143

4.3 Discussion.................................................................................................................. 148

4.3.1 Problems associated with the use of electroporation of the E4 chick roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary to assess gene function .......... 148

4.3.2 Ligand driven Notch signalling in the roof plate epithelium is sufficient to convert roof plate epithelial cells to roof plate boundary cells ...................................... 149

4.3.3 The role of cHairy2 in the maintenance of the roof plate boundary-organiser ... 151

4.3.4 The roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary signals to both the hindbrain neuroepithelium and the roof plate epithelium............................... 153

Chapter 5 Discussion ...................................................................................................... 157

5.1 Re-definition of the hindbrain roof plate organiser.................................................... 158

5.2 Towards a general model for CNS organisers .......................................................... 159

5.2.1 Activated Notch signalling.................................................................................... 160

5.2.2 Hes transcription factors .................................................................................... 165

5.2.3 Tissue interactions – other signalling pathways?............................................... 167

5.2.4 Lineage restriction............................................................................................... 168

5.2.5 Roof plate organiser formation .......................................................................... 169
5.2.6 Beyond the CNS – a generalised model for organisers?.......................... 170

5.3 Choroid plexus development ...................................................................... 171

5.3.1 Choroid plexus epithelium development .................................................. 171

5.3.2 Candidates for the signals derived from the roof plate boundary .............. 174

5.3.3 Choroidal blood vessel development .......................................................... 175

5.3.4 Role of the roof plate boundary-organiser and the integrated coordination of choroid plexus and neural development........................................... 176

5.4 Conclusions..................................................................................................... 178

Chapter 6 Materials and Methods .................................................................... 179

6.1 Common Solutions.......................................................................................... 179

6.2 Animals ........................................................................................................... 181

6.3 Molecular Biology .......................................................................................... 181

6.3.1 Cloning of chairy2∆WRPW and full length chairy2 from chick cDNA .......... 181

6.3.2 Restriction enzyme digestion of PCR products and receptive pBluescript II KS+ vector........................................................................................................... 182

6.3.3 Ligation reaction and mini-preparation of DNA constructs......................... 183

6.3.4 Sequencing of chairy2 and chairy2∆WRPW.................................................. 184

6.3.5 Construction of the chairy2∆WRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 and chairy2-IRESeGFPm5 constructs ................................................................. 184

6.3.6 Amplification of DNA constructs ................................................................. 184

6.3.7 Generation of antisense riboprobes for in situ hybridisation ....................... 184

6.4 Histological techniques ................................................................................... 185

6.4.1 Cryostat sectioning....................................................................................... 185

6.4.2 Vibrotome sectioning.................................................................................... 185

6.4.3 RNA in situ hybridisation............................................................................. 186
6.4.3.1 Whole mount in situ hybridisation.............................................................. 186

6.4.3.2 In situ hybridisation on cryostat sections. ............................................... 187

6.4.4 Immunohistochemical Staining...................................................................... 188

6.4.4.1 Whole-mount .......................................................................................... 188

6.4.4.2 Cryostat sections .................................................................................... 188

6.5 Explant co-cultures ........................................................................................ 189

6.6 Microsurgical transplantation ...................................................................... 189

6.7 In ovo electroporation .................................................................................. 190

6.8 LysoTracker staining .................................................................................... 190

6.9 Imaging and image processing ..................................................................... 190

6.10 Cell counting and statistical analysis ......................................................... 191

Appendix A .......................................................................................................... 193

Appendix B .......................................................................................................... 194

Appendix C .......................................................................................................... 195

Appendix D .......................................................................................................... 196

Appendix E .......................................................................................................... 198

Bibliography ........................................................................................................ 200
Chapter 1 Introduction

A general principle of embryogenesis is that cells communicate in order for the process of regulative development to occur (reviewed in Gurdon, 1992). This is the process by which an embryo develops normally even if cells are removed or re-arranged at an early stage (reviewed in Wolpert et al., 2002). Specialised groups of cells, known as organisers, that direct the development of an adjacent field of cells via the process known as induction are central to this process. The first of these to be described is known as Spemann’s organiser after its discovery by Hans Spemann and Hilde Mangold (1924) through transplantation experiments in salamander embryos. Their experiments showed that dorsal blastopore lip from a donor embryo is able to induce a secondary anteroposterior body axis when grafted into the ventral side of a host embryo. Most of the tissues in the secondary axis are derived from the host and so Spemann and Mangold termed the dorsal blastopore lip an ‘organiser’ as it was capable of patterning surrounding tissue in a non-autonomous fashion. Subsequently, equivalent organisers have been identified in mouse, chick and zebrafish and are referred to as the node in mouse, Hensen’s node in chick and the shield in zebrafish (reviewed in Stern et al., 2006).

The initial ‘organiser’ region acts broadly before and during gastrulation to establish the anteroposterior and dorsoventral axes of the embryo (reviewed in De Robertis and Kuroda, 2004). It achieves this by secreting signalling molecules that generally act as morphogens (reviewed in Stern, 2001; De Robertis and Kuroda, 2004). Morphogens are proposed to signal to cells both adjacent to and at a distance from their source and induce different responses in cells in a concentration-dependent manner (Wolpert, 1969; reviewed in Wolpert, 1996).

After gastrulation secondary organisers act locally to direct growth and refine the broad patterning of the body axes that was laid down by the initial organiser. Examples of these secondary organisers include the apical ectodermal ridge and the zone of polarising activity that pattern growth of the vertebrate limb bud (Saunders, 1948; Honig, 1981; reviewed in Tickle, 1995), and a number of distinct organisers that reside within the neuroectoderm (reviewed in Kiecker and Lumsden, 2005) and pattern central nervous system (CNS) development that will be discussed in more detail below.

The signalling molecules secreted by organisers during development fall into a remarkably small number of classes that are used iteratively throughout development. The five main classes involved in patterning the vertebrate CNS are: the bone morphogenetic proteins (BMPs), which were originally identified for their ability to induce de novo cartilage
formation (Wozney et al., 1988), fibroblast growth factors (FGFs) that are so named for their ability to induce fibroblast proliferation (Gospodarowicz, 1974), Wnts, whose name originates as a hybrid of wingless (a wnt gene in Drosophila (Sharma and Chopra, 1976)) and int (int1 being a mammalian homologue of wingless, originally identified in mouse as an oncogene whose expression is activated by the integration of mouse mammary tumour virus (Nusse et al., 1984; van Ooyen and Nusse, 1984)), Hedgehog proteins, of which Sonic Hedgehog is the main player during CNS development (Roelink et al., 1995; Chiang et al., 1996), and retinoic acid, which is not a protein but a small molecule derived from vitamin A (Durston et al., 1989; Duester, 2000; reviewed in Maden, 2002). The role of members of these signalling families in the organisation of the developing CNS will be described below.

1.1 Organisers in the developing central nervous system

For the most part the developing vertebrate CNS begins as a flat neural plate that bends to form a neural tube via the process of primary neurulation (reviewed in Lowery and Sive, 2004) (see Figure 1-2). From neural plate to neural tube stages the developing CNS is patterned in a Cartesian-coordinate manner, with cells being instructed on their anteroposterior and dorsoventral positions by signals deriving from the poles of both axes. An initially global anteroposterior pattern is established by signals emanating from ‘the organiser’, while the dorsoventral pattern is established by tissues deriving from the axial mesendoderm of the organiser (the notochord and prechordal plate) and the epidermal ectoderm (reviewed in Placzek, 1995; Lee and Jessell, 1999; Kiecker and Niehrs, 2001b; Stern, 2001). This initially global pattern is then re-fined by locally-acting secondary organisers located within the neuroepithelium, as will be described below (reviewed in Kiecker and Lumsden, 2005).

1.1.1 Anteroposterior patterning

During gastrulation the neural plate is globally patterned in a planar fashion, along the anteroposterior axis, by signals emanating from ‘the organiser’ (reviewed in Stern, 2001). These posteriorising signals include retinoic acid, Fgfs and Wnts, which act dose-dependently (Kiecker and Niehrs, 2001a; reviewed in Maden, 2002; Mason, 2007). At least in the case of Wnt signals, inhibitors are expressed by the anterior axial mesendoderm (derived from the organiser) that protect the anterior neural plate from posteriorising signals and thus induce anterior neural fates, such as forebrain (reviewed in Kiecker and Niehrs, 2001b; Stern, 2001). The posteriorising effects of the above morphogens can be demonstrated by their effects on expression of genes of the hox cluster, which are expressed in specific, overlapping domains along the anteroposterior axis in the hindbrain and spinal cord and encode transcription factors that endow neurons with their anteroposterior identity.
This initially global anteroposterior patterning is later refined by local secondary organisers (Figure 1-1) (reviewed in Kiecker and Lumsden, 2005). The secondary organisers patterning the anteroposterior axis of the CNS that have so far been identified include: the anterior neural boundary, which lies at the anterior border of the neural plate and later forms the commissural plate, both of which pattern the forebrain via signals such as fibroblast growth factor 8 (Fgf8) (Shimamura and Rubenstein, 1997; Meyers et al., 1998; Fukuchi-Shimogori and Grove, 2001; Garel et al., 2003; Walshe and Mason, 2003; Toyoda et al., 2010), the zona limitans intrathalamica (ZLI), which patterns the adjacent thalamus and pre-thalamus via sonic hedgehog (shh) (Kiecker and Lumsden, 2004; Vieira et al., 2005; Scholpp et al., 2006; Vue et al., 2009) and the midbrain-hindbrain boundary, which patterns the adjacent midbrain and hindbrain primarily via Fgf8 (Crossley et al., 1996; Lee et al., 1997; Martinez et al., 1999; Irving and Mason, 2000).

In general, these organisers are highly conserved in vertebrates. However, for at least one set of boundaries, a role for signalling may be restricted to certain taxa of the vertebrate phylogeny. In the embryonic hindbrain, neuroectoderm is divided into a series of lineage restriction compartments known as rhombomeres (Fraser et al., 1990). Experiments in zebrafish have alluded to a role of rhombomere boundaries in patterning adjacent rhombomeres (Riley et al., 2004; Amoyel et al., 2005). Rhombomere boundaries express a number of wnt signalling molecules including wnt1, and upon morpholino knockdown of wnt1 or a downstream component of the canonical Wnt signalling pathway, boundary markers expand while neurogenesis adjacent to the boundaries is inhibited (Riley et al., 2004; Amoyel et al., 2005). The neurogenesis that occurs in wnt1/wnt10b/wnt3a/wnt8b-deficient embryos is extremely disorganised, but hindbrain segmentation is maintained, as assessed by the expression of segmentally expressed genes (Riley et al., 2004). However a recent study suggests that these effects may be mediated by non-specific toxicity of the wnt1 morpholino and other morpholinos used in the above studies (Gerety and Wilkinson, 2011). However the loss of rhombomere boundaries in zebrafish mutants that disrupt boundary formation and maintenance coincides with disorganised neurogenesis, with a loss of neurons produced adjacent to boundaries but a compensatory increase in neurons produced at rhombomere centres (Riley et al., 2004). It is argued that this disruption of organised neurogenesis reflects a patterning role of the rhombomere boundaries, rather than excessive cell mixing between rhombomeres as expression of segmentally expressed genes are still
Figure 1-1 Schematic diagram showing secondary organisers in the developing CNS

Modified from (Kiecker and Lumsden, 2005). Diagrams illustrate lateral views of a Hamburger–Hamilton stage 13 (st13) (A) and a st24 chick embryos (B) with anterior to the left and dorsal oriented upwards. Anteroposterior secondary organisers include the pCP (prospective commissural plate), the ZLI (zona limitans intrathalamica), the MHB (midbrain-hindbrain boundary) and the rhombomere boundaries (solid blue lines between rhombomeres r1 - r7). prZLI, prospective ZLI; Tel, telencephalon; Hth, hypothalamus; Pth, pre-thalamus; Th, thalamus; Ptec, pre-tectum.
maintained in their proper spatial domains (Riley et al., 2004). Overexpression of wnt1 in these mutants could partially rescue the organisation of neurogenesis. Thus it is likely that rhombomere boundaries do have roles as organisers in zebrafish, but whether this is via Wnt signals is currently unclear. Whether rhombomere boundaries function as organisers in other vertebrates remains to be determined.

1.1.2 Dorsoventral patterning

After neural induction is complete, the mediolateral axis of the neural plate (which converts into the dorsoventral axis upon neurulation) is initially patterned by two non-neuronal tissues: the mesodermal notochord (or the prechordal plate at presumptive forebrain levels) and the epidermal ectoderm (reviewed in Lee and Jessell, 1999).

1.1.2.1 Ventralising signals

Elegant surgical grafting studies in chick showed that the notochord is necessary and sufficient to induce the formation of ventral cell types, such as the floor plate and motor neurons, but represses the formation of dorsal cell types in the spinal cord (Placzek et al., 1990; Placzek et al., 1991; Yamada et al., 1991; Ericson et al., 1992; Goulding et al., 1993; reviewed in Patten and Placzek, 2000) (Figure 1-2). The floor plate is itself an organiser of the ventral neuroepithelium as it can also ectopically induce ventral cell types in neuroepithelium (Yamada et al., 1991; Placzek et al., 1993; reviewed in Placzek, 1995).

The signalling molecule responsible for this inductive process was shown to be Sonic Hedgehog (Shh). Shh is expressed by both the notochord and the floor plate and can induce the ectopic formation of floor plate or motor neurons in mouse, zebrafish, chick and frog neuroepithelium (Echelard et al., 1993; Krauss et al., 1993; Roelink et al., 1994; Marti et al., 1995a; Marti et al., 1995b; Tanabe et al., 1995). Blocking of Shh activity inhibits the inductive effects of the notochord on chick neural plate explants and in mice carrying a mutant form of shh, the floor plate fails to form and ventral cell types are lacking, with a compensatory expansion of more dorsal markers (Marti et al., 1995a; Chiang et al., 1996; Ericson et al., 1996). Shh is known to act as a classic morphogen in the ventral neural tube, inducing different cell types at different exposure thresholds (Roelink et al., 1995; Ericson et al., 1996; Ericson et al., 1997; Briscoe et al., 2000; Dessaud et al., 2007).

Recently it has also been demonstrated by the expression of a fluorescently labelled Shh protein (Shh-GFP) in mouse that a dynamic ventral – dorsal gradient of Shh protein exists in the ventral neural tube, but that the profile of this gradient can be altered by the response of target-field cells (Chamberlain et al., 2008). Shh signalling has been shown to regulate the expression of various basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH) and homeodomain-containing transcription factors in the ventral neural tube that define different progenitor domains.
Figure 1-2 Initial patterning of the mediolateral/dorsoventral axis of the neural primordium

Adapted from Lee and Jessell (1999). (A) The spinal cord is derived from the neural plate, an epithelial sheet overlying the notochord and somitic mesoderm and flanked by epidermal ectoderm. Initial mediolateral patterning of the neural plate is imposed by ventralising signals (SHH) (open arrows) from notochord cells and dorsalising signals (BMPs) (solid arrows) from epidermal ectoderm. Pax3 and Pax7 are initially expressed at all mediolateral positions in the neural plate, but are repressed medially (ventrally) by SHH signalling. (B) At the neural fold stage, BMP signalling promotes maintenance of Pax3/Pax7 expression and induces expression of Slug in premigratory NC cells. (C) During and after neural tube closure, neural crest cells (NC) emigrate from the dorsal neural tube and roof plate is generated at the dorsal midline. Roof plate cells are a source of molecules such as BMP that control the differentiation of dorsal interneurons (Int). N, notochord; S, somitic mesoderm; E, epidermal ectoderm; SHH, Sonic Hedgehog; BMP, bone morphogenetic protein; NC, neural crest; R, roof plate; Int, dorsal interneurons.
Figure 1-3 A) (Briscoe et al., 2000; Dessaud et al., 2007). Shh acts to repress one set of transcription factors (those belonging to class 1, which includes pax6, pax7, irx3, dbx1 and dbx2) while activating another set of transcription factors (those belonging to class 2, which includes foxa2, ntx2.2, olig2 and ntx6.1). Additionally, different levels of Shh signalling are required for the repression or activation of the expression of individual class 1 and 2 genes, resulting in their nested expression patterns (Briscoe et al., 2000; Dessaud et al., 2007).

Cross-repression of various combinations of these transcription factors acts to refine and maintain the progenitor domains (Briscoe et al., 1999; Briscoe et al., 2000). A combinatorial code of these transcription factors specifies specific neuronal cell types (Briscoe et al., 2000). Thus the notochord and the floor plate, via Shh signalling, work to pattern the ventral neural tube, partitioning it into distinct progenitor domains.

Although the induction of floor plate by notochord is a well-established phenomenon, it has been suggested that the floor plate and notochord arise from a node/organiser-derived midline-precursor cell population and that the floor plate is inserted into the neural plate during the regression of the node/organiser (Catala et al., 1996; reviewed in Le Douarin and Halpern, 2000). It is suggested that the loss of floor plate seen in notochord-ablation experiments (Placzek et al., 1990; Yamada et al., 1991) may be due to accidental removal of the floor plate along with the notochord (Teillet et al., 1998). Therefore it may be that the notochord is not required for specification of the floor plate during neurulation as indicated by the notochord-ablation studies in chick, but whether the notochord is involved in the specification of floor plate cells at an earlier stage, during gastrulation, has not yet been determined (reviewed in Le Douarin and Halpern, 2000).

1.1.2.2 Dorsalising signals

In embryos where ventralising signals had been removed via the surgical removal of the notochord, dorsal neural cell types still formed (Yamada et al., 1991; Ericson et al., 1992). Indeed a ventral expansion of normally dorsally restricted genes such as pax3 and pax7 was seen in chick and mouse embryos lacking notochord or Shh signalling (Yamada et al., 1991; Goulding et al., 1993; Chiang et al., 1996; Ericson et al., 1996). Two explanations exist for this phenomenon. Either dorsal neuronal cell fates are the default but are normally repressed by ventralising signals, or dorsal cell types require induction by dorsalising signals that are normally opposed by Shh (reviewed in Lee and Jessell, 1999). Evidence supporting the latter of these two explanations first came from observations that definitively dorsal cell types, such as neural crest cells, are still restricted to their dorsal locations upon removal of ventralising signals from the notochord at neural plate stages (Liem et al., 1995).
Figure 1-3 Dorsoventral subdivision of the spinal cord neural tube into distinct progenitor domains

(A) Modified from (Dessaud et al., 2008). Schematic of the ventral half of the neural tube, where the ventral gradient of Shh activity controls position identity by regulating the expression, in neural progenitors, of a set of transcription factors. These include Dbx1, Dbx2, Pax7, Pax6 and Irx3, which are repressed by Shh signalling, and Nkx6.1, Olig2, Nkx2.2 and Foxa2, which require Shh signalling for their expression. Thus progenitor domains are established that give rise to different postmitotic neurons. FP, floor plate; p0 – p3, progenitor domains 0 – 3 giving rise to v0 – v3 (ventral interneuron subtype 0 – 3) respectively; pMN, Motor neuron progenitor domain giving rise to MN (motor neurons); pD6, progenitor domain for dorsal interneuron subtype 6.

(B) Modified from (Wilson and Maden, 2005). Diagram of a transverse section through the spinal cord showing dorsoventral subdivision into progenitor domains at the ventricular zone giving rise to various postmitotic neurons situated in the mantle zone. Progenitor domains are marked by various combinations of transcription factors as are different neuronal cell types. dp1 – dp6, dorsal progenitor domains giving rise to dI1 – dI6 (dorsal interneuron subtypes 1 – 6) respectively; vp0 – vp3, ventral progenitor domains giving rise to v0 – v3 (ventral interneuron subtypes 0 – 3) respectively; pMN, motor neuron progenitor domain giving rise to MN (motor neurons); fp, floor plate; rp, roof plate.
The neural crest are a migratory, multipotent cell population that arise from the lateral edges (the dorsal-most regions) of the neural plate (Figure 1-2 B, C) and give rise to neurons and glia of the peripheral nervous system, as well as melanocytes and other non-neural cell types (LaBonne and Bronner-Fraser, 1998a). Early studies aiming to identify dorsalising signals focussed on signals inducing their formation. Grafting studies in chick and amphibian embryos showed that epidermal ectoderm, which flanks the lateral neural plate (Figure 1-2 A), can induce neural crest cell formation when grafted adjacent to the neural plate (Moury and Jacobson, 1989; Moury and Jacobson, 1990; Selleck and Bronner-Fraser, 1995). Neural crest cells arose from both prospective neural plate and prospective epidermal cells (Moury and Jacobson, 1990; Selleck and Bronner-Fraser, 1995). Similarly, in vitro studies using chick neural plate explants also show that interactions between epidermal ectoderm and neural plate can promote neural crest differentiation (Dickinson et al., 1995; Liem et al., 1995).

A number of studies in chick, amphibian and zebrafish embryos have identified multiple signalling families that can induce the formation of neural crest cells, such as BMPs, Wnts, FGFs and RA, although research has mainly focussed on the role of Bmps and Wnts (reviewed in Steventon et al., 2005). The Bmp signalling molecules, bmp4 and bmp7 are expressed by the epidermal ectoderm at neural fold stages and are sufficient to ectopically induce the formation of neural crest cells from caudal chick neural plate explants (Liem et al., 1995). The blockade of the Bmp signalling pathway using the secreted Bmp antagonists, Noggin and Follistatin, blocked the ability of epidermal ectoderm to induce neural crest cell formation in neural plate explants (Liem et al., 1997). Electroporation studies in chick have also shown that electroporation of the caudal neural tube with constitutively activated Bmp receptors (bmpr1a or bmpr1b) can ectopically induce neural crest marker expression and emigration of neural crest from the neural tube (Liu et al., 2004). In zebrafish, Bmp signalling has also been shown to be necessary for neural crest formation (Barth et al., 1999; Nguyen et al., 2000). Thus Bmps are important for neural crest formation in both chick and zebrafish.

A role for Wnt proteins in neural crest formation was first suggested by experiments in Xenopus in which co-expression of Wnt1 or Wnt3a, which are both specifically expressed at the dorsal midline of the neural tube, in neuralised ectodermal explants caused ectopic activation of neural crest markers (Wolda et al., 1993; Saint-Jeannet et al., 1997). Furthermore, in whole embryos, overexpression of Wnt1 or Wnt3a caused expansion of the neural crest population even when cell proliferation was inhibited. Wnt8/β-catenin signalling can also induce neural crest markers in neuralised Xenopus ectodermal explants or in whole embryos (LaBonne and Bronner-Fraser, 1998b). In chick, Wnt signals were shown to be
necessary and sufficient to induce neural crest cell formation, and Wnt6, expressed in the epidermal ectoderm, was suggested as a good candidate to mediate this process (Garcia-Castro et al., 2002). A requirement for canonical Wnt signalling for neural crest formation has also been demonstrated in Xenopus (LaBonne and Bronner-Fraser, 1998b; Tamai et al., 2000; Deardorff et al., 2001). Finally, in wnt1; wnt3a double mutant mice, neural crest and their derivatives are depleted (Ikeya et al., 1997). Although the evidence points towards Wnt signalling having an important role in neural crest formation, there has been some controversy about whether it is involved in the specification of neural crest or in the promotion of proliferation of an initially specified precursor pool (Wu et al., 2003). Ikeya et al. (1997) have argued that the loss of wnt1 and wnt3a does not affect dorsoventral patterning in the hindbrain and spinal cord as dorsoventral markers were correctly localised. In the hindbrain, dorsal progenitor populations were reduced so Ikeya et al. (1997) suggested that this represents a specific requirement for Wnt signals in promoting the proliferation of dorsal progenitor pools. However, in Xenopus embryos where cell proliferation is blocked, neural crest are still induced in response to Wnt3a (Saint-Jeannet et al., 1997). Thus it is likely that differences may occur between species with regard to the role of Wnt in neural crest induction, but also that Wnts may be involved in multiple stages of the process of neural crest formation (reviewed in Wu et al., 2003).

Roof plate cells are another population of cells generated at the dorsal midline of the neural tube (Figure 1-2). Lineage-tracing studies in mouse and in chick have shown that roof plate cells and neural crest cells are derived from the same precursors (Bronner-Fraser and Fraser, 1988; Echelard et al., 1994) and definitive markers of roof plate and neural crest are co-expressed in the neural folds and neural tube (Chizhikov and Millen, 2004b; reviewed in Chizhikov and Millen, 2004c). Although the mechanisms that segregate this precursor population are not fully understood, it is understood that roof plate is induced in the lateral folds by epidermal ectoderm in a similar manner to neural crest. Epidermal ectoderm induces the formation of MafB-positive roof plate cells from intermediate chick neural plate explants, and this could be mimicked by application of Bmp4 and Bmp7 (Liem et al., 1997). Further, blockade of Bmp signalling using Noggin and Follistatin blocked the epidermal ectoderm-driven induction of roof plate cells. Further support for an instructive role of Bmp signalling in roof plate formation came from electroporation studies of the caudal chick neural plate and neural tube. Electroporation of noggin inhibited roof plate formation while overexpression of bmp4, bmp7 or activated bmp receptors (bmpr1a or bmpr1b) greatly expanded the roof plate, as assessed by roof plate markers such as MafB and Lmx1a (Chizhikov and Millen, 2004b; Liu et al., 2004). Thus Bmp signalling is necessary and sufficient for roof plate formation.
Several members of the Wnt family are expressed in epidermal ectoderm and the dorsal midline region during roof plate development (Hollyday et al., 1995; Megason and McMahon, 2002). As described above, Wnt signals are required for the development of neural crest in chick, mouse and xenopus embryos (reviewed in Wu et al., 2003). Thus it seems likely that Wnt signals might be involved in the induction of roof plate formation, although no specific role for Wnt signals has yet been found. In disagreement with this, inhibition of the Wnt signalling pathway by electroporating a dominant negative \textit{wnt1} or \textit{tcf4} (a downstream effector of canonical Wnt signalling (Megason and McMahon, 2002)) construct into the caudal chick neural plate did not affect the formation of roof plate (Chizhikov and Millen, 2004b), although this does not preclude an earlier role for Wnt signalling in induction of roof plate specification.

1.1.2.3 The roof plate is an organiser

The roof plate itself expresses multiple Bmps and Wnts and its organiser activity has been shown to be required for the development of the three dorsal-most interneuron cell types of the developing spinal cord (Hollyday et al., 1995; Liem et al., 1997; Lee et al., 2000a; Megason and McMahon, 2002). Like the ventral half of the spinal cord, the dorsal half can also be subdivided into distinct progenitor domains marked by different sets of bHLH and homeodomain-containing transcription factors that give rise to different types of neurons (Figure 1-3 B). The dorsal half of the spinal cord gives rise to six groups of interneurons (dI1 – dI6), with the progenitor domain of dI1 being marked by \textit{mouse atonal homolog 1 (math1} or \textit{cath1} in chick) (Helms and Johnson, 1998), the progenitor domain of dI2 being marked by \textit{neurogenin 1 (ngn1)}(Lee et al., 2000a) and the progenitor domain of dI3 being included in the \textit{mouse achaete-scute homolog 1 (mash1} or \textit{cash1} in chick)(Gowan et al., 2001) expression domain (reviewed in Wilson and Maden, 2005). In mice where the roof plate is ablated by the expression of diphtheria toxin A subunit driven by the \textit{gdf7} locus, the progenitors and mature neurons of the dI1, dI2 and dI3 interneuron groups fail to form and there is a compensatory increase in the more ventral neuronal types (dI4-6) and the \textit{mash1}-positive progenitor domain (Lee et al., 2000a; reviewed in Chizhikov and Millen, 2005).

The roof plate can induce the formation of dI1 – dI3 interneurons in chick intermediate neural plate explants (Liem et al., 1997). Just as Bmps are the main signalling family involved in the induction of the roof plate itself, Bmps have been shown to be the main signalling family involved in mediating the inductive properties of the roof plate. Application of the roof plate-expressed BMP family members, Bmp4, Bmp5, Bmp6, Bmp7 and Gdf7 (also known as Bmp12) to chick neural explants results in the induction of dorsal neural cell types \textit{in vitro} (Liem et al., 1997; Lee et al., 1998), while blockade of Bmp signalling with Noggin and Follistatin inhibited the ability of the roof plate to induce dorsal
cell types in \textit{in vitro} neural cultures (Liem et al., 1997; Lee et al., 1998). Electroporation studies in chick have further demonstrated that Bmp signalling is necessary and sufficient for dorsal interneuron formation (Timmer et al., 2002; Chesnutt et al., 2004; Chizhikov and Millen, 2004a; Liu et al., 2004). Chizhikov and Millen (2004a) also showed that the ability of an expanded roof plate (induced by the overexpression of \textit{lmx1b}) to induce dI1 interneurons adjacent to it at the expense of dI2-6 neurons was mediated mostly by Bmp signalling. Timmer et al. (2002) have shown that induction of different dorsal cell types requires different thresholds of Bmp signalling, with the highest levels of Bmp signalling inducing the dI1 progenitors at the expense of dI2 progenitors, but low level signalling inducing the ventral expansion of the dI2 progenitor domain. Thus Bmp signals may act as classic morphogens in the induction of dorsal neuronal cell types.

Genetic deletion studies in mice have not provided much evidence for specific roles of individual Bmps in specification of dorsal neural cell types, presumably due to redundancy between Bmp family members (reviewed in Chizhikov and Millen, 2005). Gdf7 is the exception to this. Genetic loss of \textit{gdf7} results in a loss of a specific subset of dI1 interneurons (formerly known as D1A) in mouse (Lee et al., 1998). This result raises the possibility that individual Bmp family members are responsible for promoting the formation of different dorsal neuronal cell types, rather than different thresholds of Bmp signalling, as proposed by Timmer et al. (2002). The reality is likely to be a combination of both of these scenarios. The above examples focus on the role of the roof plate in mouse and chick. However in zebrafish embryos, specific thresholds of Bmp signalling have been demonstrated to be necessary for the formation of dorsal and intermediate neuronal cell types in the spinal cord (Barth et al., 1999; Nguyen et al., 2000). Therefore graded Bmp signalling is likely to be a conserved mechanism required for the patterning of the dorsal neural tube.

Evidence that Wnt signals are important in the morphogenesis of the neural tube came from a study using antisense oligonucleotides to perturb the function of Wnt1 and Wnt3a. Mouse embryos treated with these oligonucleotides showed hypoplasia of the forebrain, midbrain and hindbrain, and lateral out-pocketings in the spinal cord (Augustine et al., 1993). Wnt1 and Wnt3a are expressed in the spinal cord roof plate and studies originally pointed towards a purely mitogenic role for these proteins in the development of the dorsal spinal cord (Dickinson et al., 1994; Megason and McMahon, 2002). In support of this Chesnutt et al. (2004) showed that expression of a dominant-negative \textit{wnt}-receptor (\textit{frizzled 8}) in the chick spinal cord caused a general reduction in cell number of dI1-6 cells, rather than having a specific effect on dI1-3. Additionally, overexpression of \textit{wnt3a} did not have a significant effect on dI1-6 production and \textit{wnt3a} overexpression could not rescue the loss of dI1 cells and the dorsal shift of dI2 – 6 cells caused by overexpression of \textit{noggin}. However \textit{wnt1-/-}
**wnt3a-/-** double mutant mice show a specific reduction in dI1-3 neurons with a compensatory increase in more ventral interneurons (Muroyama et al., 2002). Furthermore, application of Wnt3a to the medial region of the chick neural plate could induce dI1 and dI2 neuronal production, without the involvement of BMP signalling. The discrepancies between the results of Chesnutt et al. (2004) and Muroyama et al. (2002) with regard to the overexpression of Wnt3a may be due to the differences in timing of the overexpression of Wnt3a. Indeed, recent work by Bonner et al. (2008) using zebrafish have shown that the effect of inhibition of the Wnt/β-catenin pathway is determined by its timing. Early inhibition shows that Wnt signalling is required for proliferation, whereas later inhibition shows that it is required for dorsoventral patterning of the spinal cord. A recent study re-addressing the role of Wnts in dorsoventral patterning of the spinal cord shows that co-electroporation of **wnt1** and **wnt3a** in the chick caused a ventral expansion of dorsal progenitor domains and dI2-4 interneuron populations at the expense of the more ventral dI6 interneurons, ventral V0 – 1 interneurons and motor neurons (Alvarez-Medina et al., 2008). Alvarez-Medina et al. (2008) also show that the activity of Wnt1/Wnt3a is independent of BMP signalling, but dependent on the Shh/Gli pathway. It was shown that Wnt1/Wnt3a antagonise Shh in order to orchestrate dorsoventral patterning of the chick spinal cord. Thus it is likely that Wnts and Bmps work in concert to specify dorsal neuronal cell types in the spinal cord in chick, mouse and zebrafish embryos.

### 1.1.2.4 The roof plate and dorsal patterning of the hindbrain

At the hindbrain, like in the spinal cord, the dorsal-most region of neuroepithelium adjacent to the roof plate is marked by Math1 (Cath1 in chick) (Wang et al., 2005; Wilson and Wingate, 2006). This Math1 expression domain is known as the rhombic lip, a germinative region that gives rise to excitatory neurons of the cerebellar and pre-cerebellar systems (Wingate and Hatten, 1999; Machold and Fishell, 2005; Wang et al., 2005; Wilson and Wingate, 2006; Rose et al., 2009a). The rhombic lip is subdivided into the upper rhombic lip (derived from rhombomere 1), which gives rise to cerebellar neurons and the lower rhombic lip (derived from rhombomeres 2 – 8), which gives rise to pre-cerebellar neurons (Figure 1-4 B) (Machold and Fishell, 2005; Wang et al., 2005; Ray and Dymecki, 2009). Throughout this thesis I will refer to the upper roof plate as that dorsomedial to the upper rhombic lip and the lower roof plate as that located dorsomedially from the lower rhombic lip.

Research of the role of the roof plate in dorsoventral patterning of the hindbrain has focussed on its role in patterning the cerebellar anlage (upper rhombic lip level). In mouse, ablation of the roof plate results in a specific loss of the dorsal-most neural progenitor pool, which is marked by Math1, while the more ventrolaterally located progenitors are still specified but are present in smaller numbers (Chizhikov et al., 2006). Chizhikov et al. (2006) hence
Figure 1-4 Diagrams of brain ventricles

Lateral view of an E4 chick head

Dorsal view of E4 chick hindbrain

Development of the dorsal telencephalon of mouse in coronal section
Figure 1-4 Diagrams of brain ventricles

(A) Schematic diagram of a lateral view of an E4 chick embryo head, showing the locations of the forebrain (fb), third (iii) and fourth (iv) ventricles. The head is oriented with anterior to the left.

(B) Diagram of dorsal view of E4 chick embryo hindbrain. The rhombic lip can be separated into the upper rhombic lip (URL), derived from rhombomere 1 (R1) of the hindbrain, and the lower rhombic lip (LRL), derived from rhombomeres 2 – 8 (R2 – R8) of the hindbrain. The roof plate immediately dorsomedial to the URL is referred to as the upper roof plate (URP), whereas the roof plate dorsomedial to the LRL is referred to as the lower roof plate (LRP). Anterior is oriented upwards.

(C) Diagram of (E9.5–E12.5) mouse dorsal telencephalon development in coronal section. Modified from (Chizhikov and Millen, 2005). Roof plate cells (RP, red) occupy the dorsal midline of the developing telencephalon at E9.5. As development proceeds, the roof plate invaginates relative to the lateral neuroepithelium forming the cortical hem (hem, green), the choroid plexus epithelium (CPE, red) and the roof plate epithelium (RPE, purple) by E12.5. These dorsal midline structures lie adjacent to the hippocampal field (HF, black), which itself is medial to the developing neocortex (neo, grey).
proposed that the hindbrain roof plate is required for specification of the rhombomere 1 Math1-domain, but only for proliferation of the more ventral cell types in the mouse. Ectopic roof plate was also sufficient to induce or expand the Math1 domain both in vivo and in vitro, and Chizhikov et al. (2006) showed that this induction was dependent on BMP signals. Previous studies have also demonstrated the importance of BMP family members in the induction of Math1-positive cells. Gdf7, Bmp6 and Bmp7 can induce Math1-positive cells in vitro and the BMP receptors, Bmpr1a and Bmpr1b, are required in a redundant fashion for the specification of the cerebellar granule cells (derived from Math1-positive progenitors), but not the Purkinje cells, which are derived from the slightly more ventrolateral Ptf1a-positive progenitor pool of the cerebellar anlage (Alder et al., 1999; Chizhikov et al., 2006; Qin et al., 2006; Pascual et al., 2007).

However, work in zebrafish, chick and mouse have indicated that Bmp signals (most probably deriving from the roof plate) are also involved in the specification of neurons generated in the intermediate hindbrain neural tube; neurons of the locus coeruleus. These neurons are generated at the dorsolateral aspect of rhombomere 1 and are phox2a/b positive (Guo et al., 1999; Vogel-Hopker and Rohrer, 2002). Vogel-Hopker and Rohrer (2002) showed in chick that the formation and position of these neurons rely on Bmp signals. Treatment of embryos with Noggin at Hamburger and Hamilton st10 – 11 (Hamburger and Hamilton, 1951) caused a loss of phox2a-positive locus coeruleus neurons in a small percentage of cases, but in the majority of cases caused the ectopic location of locus coeruleus neurons across the dorsal midline. This ectopic expansion correlated with a loss of the roof plate and a dorsal expansion of the intermediate neural tube marker, pax6. These results suggest a situation where graded Bmp signalling is required for dorsal development in rhombomere 1, with higher thresholds being required to restrict the dorsal extent of intermediate progenitors, but a low threshold of Bmp signalling being required for the development of intermediate progenitors. These findings are consistent with those in zebrafish where severe Bmp signalling mutants lack locus coeruleus cells, but ectopic locus coeruleus cells form in mild Bmp signalling mutants (Guo et al., 1999). The specific Bmp signals required for locus coeruleus development are likely to be Bmp5 and Bmp7 from the roof plate as locus coeruleus neurons are missing in bmp5/-; bmp7/- double knockout mice (Tilleman et al., 2010). Further work is required to reconcile the findings of Chizhikov et al. (2006), who find that only the specification of the dorsal-most Math1-positive progenitor pool requires signals from the roof plate for their specification, with those of Tilleman et al. (2010), who find that specification of the intermediate-domain produced locus coeruleus neurons depends on Bmp signals that most probably derive from the roof plate.
Little evidence currently exists to suggest a role for Wnt signals from the roof plate being involved in specification of the dorsal progenitor pools of the hindbrain. Indeed in \textit{wnt1}; \textit{wnt3a} double mutant mice, the hindbrain appeared to be correctly patterned along the dorsoventral axis, but there was a reduction in the dorsal-most progenitor pools, marked by \textit{math1} and \textit{pax3} (Ikeya et al., 1997). This was proposed to be due to a specific dependence of these pools on mitogenic Wnt signals. However, recent findings show that activation of the Wnt pathway causes tumours deriving from lower rhombic lip cells but that this was not due to increased proliferation in the lower rhombic lip (Gibson et al., 2010). Therefore, further work is required to determine the role of the Wnt signalling pathway in the specification and promotion of proliferation of dorsal neuronal cell types.

1.1.2.5 The roof plate and dorsal patterning of the diencephalon

Msx1 is a transcription factor that is a well described downstream effector of Bmp signalling (Timmer et al., 2002; Liu et al., 2004). \textit{msx1} is expressed in the diencephalic roof plate and in \textit{msx1/-} mice the diencephalic roof plate is disrupted, particularly at the pretectum (Bach et al., 2003). This results in a downregulation of dorsolaterally expressed genes such as \textit{pax6/7} and \textit{lim1} in the diencephalon. Therefore the diencephalic roof plate is required for dorsolateral gene expression, however whether the reduction of dorsal gene expression is at the expense of more ventral gene expression is not known.

1.1.2.6 The roof plate and dorsal patterning of the telencephalon

The telencephalic roof plate sinks between the two cortical hemispheres and gives rise to three distinct subdomains (Shinozaki et al., 2004; reviewed in Chizhikov and Millen, 2005). From most lateral to most medial these are the cortical hem, the choroid plexus epithelium and the roof plate epithelium (Figure 1-4 C)(Shinozaki et al., 2004). A genetic ablation study in mouse showed that ablation of the roof plate and its derivatives by driving the expression of diphtheria toxin A subunit from the \textit{gdf7}-locus resulted in a reduction in size of the cerebral cortices and a reduction of their dorsal – ventral graded \textit{lhx2} expression (Monuki et al., 2001). Monuki et al. (2001) suggested that this effect was due to a loss of Bmp patterning signals from the roof plate as application of beads soaked in Bmp4 or Bmp2 to dorsal telencephalic explants could mimic the proposed action of the roof plate. Immediately adjacent to the beads, \textit{lhx2} expression was downregulated (corresponding to the situation in the cortical hem and choroid plexus epithelium) whereas at a distance from the bead, \textit{lhx2} expression was upregulated (corresponding to the dorsal – ventral graded expression of \textit{lhx2} in the cortex).

The dorsal midline structures express multiple Bmps and the effects of Bmp2/4 \textit{in vitro} on dorsal telencephalic explants prompted the further investigation of Bmp signalling in
dorsoventral patterning of the cerebral cortex (Furuta et al., 1997; Monuki et al., 2001; Shinozaki et al., 2004). However it was found that mice null for the Bmp receptor, bmpr1a, in the telencephalon display mostly normal dorsoventral patterning of the telencephalon (Hebert et al., 2002). The only phenotype observed in these mice was the specific loss of choroid plexus, as assessed by a reduction in the expression of the choroid plexus epithelial marker, ttr. In support of this, expression of a constitutively active form of bmpr1a throughout the ventricular zone of the brain results in the conversion of the telencephalic alar plate into choroid plexus, while the basal plate is unaffected (Panchision et al., 2001). These observations point towards a specific requirement for Bmp signals in the development of the choroid plexus, but do not support a dorsoventral gradient of Bmp signals that orchestrate global patterning of the telencephalon.

Multiple wnt genes are also expressed in the dorsal midline region, primarily in the cortical hem (Grove et al., 1998; Lee et al., 2000b; Shinozaki et al., 2004). Cortical hem expressed wnt3a has been shown to be essential for the development of the hippocampus, which develops from the domain immediately lateral from the cortical hem (Lee et al., 2000b). A loss of hippocampal neurons is also seen in mice mutant for the downstream Wnt pathway components, lef1 and β-catenin (Galceran et al., 2000; Machon et al., 2003). Both studies support a role for Wnts in both the specification of cell types and the promotion of proliferation within the hippocampal fields.

The boundary between the pallium and the subpallium (PSB) expresses Wnt inhibitors, raising the possibility that a gradient of Wnt activity is established across the pallium between the hem and the PSB (which has also been called the ‘anti-hem’), which might serve to pattern the neocortex (Frowein et al., 2002; Assimacopoulos et al., 2003). However there is little evidence for a patterning role for Wnts in the pallium beyond the specification of the hippocampal fields (Chenn and Walsh, 2002; Hirabayashi et al., 2004; Muzio et al., 2005; Machon et al., 2007). The PSB also expresses several members of the epidermal growth factor family, transforming growth factor α, and FGF7 (Assimacopoulos et al., 2003), however the role of these signalling factors in dorsoventral patterning of the forebrain has yet to be determined.

1.1.3 Properties of secondary organisers

The secondary organisers described above that are resident within the neuroepithelium are mostly found at boundaries between molecularly distinguishable compartments of tissue, for example the anterior neural boundary (ANB), the zona limitans intrathalamica (ZLI) between the pre-thalamus and the thalamus, the midbrain-hindbrain boundary (MHB) and rhombomere boundaries (reviewed in Kiecker and Lumsden, 2005). The exceptions to this
are the roof plate and floor plate, which are located at boundaries between molecularly indistinguishable compartments (the two halves of the neural tube). Boundary-localised organisers display certain typical properties that reflect mechanisms required for their formation and maintenance. These properties are described below.

1.1.3.1 Lineage restriction

The identification of boundaries that compartmentalise tissues was first discovered in Drosophila. Clones of cells marked during Drosophila wing development were shown to respect certain lineage restriction boundaries that divide the wing primordium (the wing imaginal disc) into anterior-posterior and dorsal-ventral compartments (Garcia-Bellido et al., 1973; Morata and Lawrence, 1975; Garcia-Bellido et al., 1976). These boundaries were later demonstrated to be organisers that pattern the wing imaginal disc and direct its growth (reviewed in Irvine and Rauskolb, 2001). More recently, evidence for compartmentalisation within the developing vertebrate nervous system came from clonal analysis within the hindbrain, which demonstrated that rhombomere boundaries restrict cell mixing between rhombomeres (Fraser et al., 1990; Jimenez-Guri et al., 2010). The MHB has also been demonstrated to be a lineage restriction boundary in zebrafish and mouse embryos (Zervas et al., 2004; Langenberg and Brand, 2005), although evidence has been presented that it is not so in chick (Jungbluth et al., 2001). The ZLI is not composed of a single boundary but is a compartment in its own right, bounded anteriorly and posteriorly by lineage restriction boundaries (Larsen et al., 2001). Although its role as an organiser has not yet been formally demonstrated, the pallial – subpallial boundary (PSB) in the telencephalon has also been shown to be a boundary to cell movement (Fishell et al., 1993). It has been proposed that the function of lineage restriction at these boundary-localised organisers is to facilitate the maintenance of the organiser as a sharp, straight domain, thereby allowing consistent patterning to occur in the adjacent compartments by morphogen gradients emanating from the boundary (Irvine and Rauskolb, 2001).

1.1.3.2 Specialisations of cells, their organisation and rate of proliferation

Aside from the expression of signalling molecules, many boundaries in the developing CNS show certain specialised properties such as specialised extracellular matrix and a low rate of proliferation in comparison with cells within compartments (Baek et al., 2006). Studies have determined that the chick rhombomere boundaries and the ZLI share properties such as large extracellular spaces (Lumsden and Keynes, 1989; Heyman et al., 1993; Larsen et al., 2001), expression of the extracellular matrix component chondroitin sulphate proteoglycan (CSPG), the cell adhesion molecule NCAM or the radial glia marker Vimentin (Lumsden and Keynes, 1989; Heyman et al., 1995; Larsen et al., 2001), and a localisation of S-phase nuclei apically, rather than basally, within the ventricular zone (Guthrie et al., 1991; Larsen et al., 2001).
Another property associated with boundaries is a low level of proliferation. This has been demonstrated for the ZLI and the MHB in mouse (Trokovic et al., 2005; Baek et al., 2006) and the spinal cord roof plate and floor plate and the hindbrain rhombomere boundaries in mouse and chick embryos (Guthrie et al., 1991; Kahane and Kalcheim, 1998; Baek et al., 2006). Neuroepithelial organisers also display delayed or a lack of neurogenesis (Hirata et al., 2001; Bingham et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2003; le Roux et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005; Baek et al., 2006).

Therefore, boundaries in chick share a number of similar immunohistochemical markers such as CSPG, NCAM and Vimentin, although whether these also mark CNS boundaries in other organisms remains to be determined. A common feature of boundaries in many organisms is a low level of proliferation and a lack of neurogenesis. These are likely to reflect mechanisms that maintain boundaries as organisers.

1.1.3.3 Signalling across the boundary from adjacent compartments enables boundary formation and maintenance

The experimental recombination of tissues from adjacent compartments can induce the formation of organisers that are normally present at the boundaries between those compartments. Examples include the recombination of prospective pre-thalamus and thalamus inducing the formation of the ZLI in vitro, as assessed by the expression of shh (Guinazu et al., 2007), and the recombination of midbrain and hindbrain tissue in vitro and in ovo, inducing the formation of the MHB, as assessed by the expression of fgf8 (Irving and Mason, 1999). Early experiments showed that the rhombomere boundaries of the chick could be regenerated upon juxtaposition of adjacent rhombomeres (Guthrie and Lumsden, 1991; Heyman et al., 1995), based on morphology and characteristic immunohistochemical markers. It should be noted, however, that the chick rhombomere boundaries have not yet been demonstrated as organisers of adjacent rhombomeres. Thus it is clear that signalling between juxtaposed compartment tissues can induce boundary cells at the interface between those juxtaposed compartments.

The mechanism that was originally investigated as mediating the processes of boundary formation and maintenance (and lineage restriction) between compartment tissues was differential cell affinity, which causes a sorting out of cells of different compartmental origin. Grafting and cell aggregation studies in avian embryos demonstrated the differential adhesive properties of alternating (odd and even-numbered) rhombomeres (Guthrie et al., 1993; Wizenmann and Lumsden, 1997). Subsequently it was demonstrated that repulsive interactions between Ephrins and Eph receptors could mediate cell sorting in zebrafish rhombomeres (Mellitzer et al., 1999; Xu et al., 1999; Cooke et al., 2001). The Eph receptor,
EphA4 has also been shown to be required for rhombomere boundary formation in zebrafish (Xu et al., 1995; Cooke et al., 2005). Although an instructive role of Eph–ephrin signalling for boundary formation has not yet been shown, the reconstitution of an ephrin-Eph interface resulted in a loss of gap junctions and cytoskeletal rearrangements, which are indicative of boundary formation (Xu et al., 1999; Cooke et al., 2001; Cooke and Moens, 2002).

A signalling pathway that has been shown to have an instructive role in the formation of boundary cells is the Notch signalling pathway. The Notch signalling pathway involves activation of transmembrane Notch receptors by transmembrane ligands of the Delta/Serrate/Lag2 [DSL] family, which results in the proteolytic cleavage of the Notch receptor and nuclear translocation of its intracellular domain (Notch ICD). The Notch ICD interacts with the DNA-binding protein CSL (named after CBF1, Su(H) and LAG-1) and activates transcription of Notch target genes such as the hes genes (reviewed in Bray, 2006). It has been implicated to act in numerous developmental situations, but usually in the context of regulating cell fate choices, such as in the process of lateral inhibition of neurogenesis (reviewed in Lewis, 1998) or in controlling the binary fate choice of neurogenic daughter cells in the ventral spinal cord, adopting either excitatory or inhibitory neuronal fates (Peng et al., 2007). However, as will be described, it is also involved in an inductive capacity in boundary formation and maintenance.

Although the Notch signalling pathway appears simple at first glance, there are in fact many different post-transcriptional mechanisms that regulate it (reviewed in Bray, 2006). Amongst these is cis-inhibition of Notch receptors by cell-autonomously expressed ligands (reviewed in del Alamo et al. 2011), which is proposed to amplify small differences between adjacent cells and thus facilitate the processes of lateral inhibition and the formation of sharp boundaries (Sprinzak et al., 2010). Ubiquitination of the ligands by the conserved E3-ubiquitin ligases, Neuralized and Mind bomb, which promotes ligand endocytosis, is required for ligand-driven Notch activation (Lai et al., 2001; Itoh et al., 2003). This highlights another layer of complexity of regulation via regulation of E3-ubiquitin ligase activity. Another important regulatory mechanism is glycosylation of the Notch receptor.

The evolutionarily conserved Fringe family of proteins are glycosyl transferases that have been shown to extend carbohydrate chains on the EGF repeats of Notch receptors (Bruckner et al., 2000; Moloney et al., 2000). This modulates the ability of Notch to respond to its various ligands, for example in the developing Drosophila wing Fringe inhibits trans-activation of Notch by Serrate, but potentiates trans-activation by Delta (Fleming et al., 1997, Panin et al., 1997, Bruckner et al., 2000). Lunatic Fringe (Lfng), a vertebrate orthologue of Drosophila Fringe, has also been shown to inhibit cis-interactions of Notch
with Delta or Serrate (Sakamoto et al., 2002), which has been proposed to contribute to the mechanism of Lfng promotion of lateral inhibition (Nikolaou et al., 2009).

The importance of the Notch pathway in boundary formation and maintenance was first highlighted in the maintenance of lineage restriction at the dorsoventral compartment boundary of the Drosophila wing imaginal disc (Micchelli and Blair, 1999). Here an activated stripe of Notch signalling maintains the expression of the signalling molecule Wingless, which patterns and directs the growth of the wing (Diaz-Benjumea and Cohen, 1995; Rulifson and Blair, 1995). The stripe of activated Notch signalling is localised by the concurrent actions of the Notch ligands, Delta and Serrate. Serrate is expressed in dorsal compartment cells and specifically activates Notch signalling in cells immediately ventral to the boundary, while Delta is expressed in the ventral compartment and activates Notch signalling in cells immediately dorsal to the boundary (Diaz-Benjumea and Cohen, 1995; Kim et al., 1995; Doherty et al., 1996; de Celis and Bray, 1997). The action of Fringe serves to restrict Notch activation to the boundary. Fringe is expressed in the dorsal compartment and inhibits signalling through Notch by Serrate, but promotes Delta-Notch signalling, thereby restricting Notch activation by Serrate to the dorsoventral boundary (Fleming et al., 1997; Panin et al., 1997). Fringe has been implicated as a particularly important component of dorsoventral boundary formation as the ectopic juxtaposition of cells expressing and not expressing Fringe is sufficient to re-position the dorsoventral boundary (Irvine and Wieschaus, 1994; Kim et al., 1995; Panin et al., 1997; Rauskolb et al., 1999) (Figure 1-5).

Recently it has been shown that activation of Notch signalling by Serrate is necessary and sufficient to position the formation of the MHB in chick embryos, as assessed by the expression of the signalling molecules, \textit{wnt1} and \textit{fgf8} (Tossell et al., 2011). \textit{lunatic fringe} (Lfng) is a vertebrate homolog of Drosophila \textit{fringe} (Moran et al., 1999). In striking similarity with the role of \textit{fringe} at the dorsoventral boundary of the wing imaginal disc, Tossell et al. (2011) found that re-positioning the \textit{lfng} expression border was also sufficient to re-position the MHB. The Notch signalling pathway has also been found to be essential for the maintenance of rhombomere boundaries in zebrafish (Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004). The \textit{delta} genes, \textit{dlA}, \textit{dlB} and \textit{dlD}, are expressed in transverse stripes adjacent to rhombomere boundaries and are proposed to activate Notch within rhombomere boundaries to maintain them (Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004). Interestingly, constitutive Notch pathway activation is not sufficient to induce rhombomere boundary formation (Cheng et al., 2004). Therefore in contrast with the dorsoventral boundary of the Drosophila wing imaginal disc and the chick MHB, Notch signalling is only involved in the maintenance of zebrafish rhombomere boundaries and not their formation.
Figure 1-5 Schematic diagrams of signalling at the dorsoventral boundary of the Drosophila wing imaginal disc and experimental manipulations of Notch pathway genes

(A) Notch is activated (N*) at the dorsoventral boundary of the Drosophila wing imaginal disc by the concerted actions of Serrate (Ser) (expressed only in the dorsal [D] compartment) and Delta (Dl) (expressed in the ventral [V] compartment). Fringe (Fng) is only expressed in the dorsal compartment and restricts Notch activation to the boundary by inhibiting activation of Notch by Ser but potentiating the activation of Notch by Dl. Notch activation induces Wingless (Wg) expression. Wg patterns the wing primordium. Oval indicates the region that gives rise to the wing blade.

(B – D) summarise experiments carried out by Panin et al. (1997) and Doherty et al. (1996). fringe (B), serrate (C) or delta (D) are overexpressed in the patched expression domain (yellow) using the Gal4 – UAS overexpression system. The ectopic expression of fringe in the ventral compartment induces Wg expression at the border between fringe-negative and fringe-positive cells (B). Ectopic expression of serrate induces expression of Wg both within and adjacent to the overexpression domain in the ventral compartment (C). Overexpression of delta causes strong ectopic expression of Wg in the dorsal compartment and weaker ectopic expression in the ventral compartment (D). A, anterior; P, posterior.
Notch signalling has also been implicated in the formation or maintenance of the ZLI in chick embryos. The ZLI begins as an \textit{lfg}-negative wedge between the \textit{lfg}-positive prospective thalamus and pre-thalamus, which transforms into a narrow \textit{shh}-expressing, \textit{lfg}-negative domain (Zeltser et al., 2001). Ectopic expression of \textit{lfg} within or across the ZLI abolishes \textit{shh} expression and the lineage restriction normally seen at the borders of the ZLI (Zeltser et al., 2001). Thus, although the role of Notch signalling in the formation or maintenance of the ZLI has not been explicitly tested, it has been implied due to the essential role of an \textit{lfg} expression border.

Thus Notch signalling across a boundary has been implicated in the formation or maintenance of the MHB, the ZLI and the rhombomere boundaries. This appears to be a conserved function of Notch signalling, conserved from chick to zebrafish embryos in the developing CNS, and involved in boundary-organiser maintenance and formation in Drosophila larvae.

1.1.3.4 Hes transcription factors

Hairy/ Enhancer of split (Hes) transcription factors are a family of repressor-type bHLH transcription factors (reviewed in Kageyama et al., 2008). They are well-known downstream effectors of Notch signalling, being essential in the maintenance of neural stem cells and inhibition of neurogenesis (Ohtsuka et al., 1999; Hatakeyama et al., 2004; reviewed in Kageyama et al., 2007). However, they have also been shown to play an essential role in the maintenance of boundary-localised organisers. While Hes1 expression is oscillatory in neural stem cells (Hirata et al., 2002; Shimojo et al., 2008), Baek et al. (2006) showed that in mice, boundaries in the CNS including the ZLI, MHB, rhombomere boundaries and the spinal cord roof plate and floor plate are characterised by the high and persistent expression of Hes1. In \textit{hes1};\textit{hes3};\textit{hes5} triple-null mice, boundary-organisers such as the ZLI, the MHB and the spinal cord roof plate and floor plate are disrupted, as assessed by their nascent signalling molecules, \textit{shh}, \textit{fgf8} or \textit{wnt1}, and ectopic neurogenesis occurs within the organiser domain (Baek et al., 2006). In this study it was not determined whether the disruption of boundary-localised organisers was due to disruption of its formation or its maintenance, however in \textit{hes1}\textendash;\textit{hes3}\textendash;\textit{hes5} mice the MHB forms but fails to be maintained (Hirata et al., 2001). Therefore, it is likely that defects in boundary-localised organisers reported by Baek et al. (2006) in \textit{hes1};\textit{hes3};\textit{hes5} triple-null mice was due to a lack of maintenance rather than formation.

In zebrafish, it has been shown that \textit{hes} homologs, the \textit{hairy-related} genes \textit{her5} and \textit{him}, are required for the maintenance of the MHB, to prevent ectopic neurogenesis there (Geling et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005). Thus the use of Hes transcription
factors in the maintenance of and prevention of ectopic neurogenesis within boundary-localised organisers is conserved from zebrafish to mice.

Although Hes genes are well known downstream effectors of Notch signalling, Geling et al. (2004) showed that the action of her5 at the MHB was Notch-independent. Furthermore, hes1 has been shown to function in Notch-independent pathways (Wall et al., 2009; Sanalkumar et al., 2010). Thus it has been suggested that the function of hes genes in the maintenance of boundary-organisers in the developing mouse CNS might also be Notch-independent (Kageyama et al., 2007), although this remains to be demonstrated.

1.2 Choroid plexus development

The role of the roof plate in the vertebrate CNS is not only as an organiser of the dorsal neuroepithelium. The roof plate is present along the entire anteroposterior axis of the CNS (Chizhikov and Millen, 2005). For the most part it constitutes a narrow strip of cells at the dorsal midline, but at certain regions it expands to form a thin epithelium that tents over a ventricle. This occurs at the lateral ventricles in the telencephalon, the third ventricle of the diencephalon, and the fourth ventricle situated in the hindbrain (Figure 1-4 A). The mechanisms that determine the anteroposterior locations of ventricle formation are not known, although studies in zebrafish have shown that the formation of ventricles requires apical junction- complex proteins and a sodium/potassium ion transporter (Lowery and Sive, 2005; Lowery et al., 2009). Cell division is also required for ventricle formation, and in zic1 and zic4 morphant embryos, a lack of fourth ventricle opening is correlated with a decrease in cell proliferation in the dorsal neuroepithelium (Lowery and Sive, 2005; Elsen et al., 2008). At the ventricles the roof plate is not only expanded, but it also later transforms into the choroid plexus epithelium (reviewed in Dziegielewksa et al., 2001). The choroid plexuses are a series of interfaces that form part of the blood-cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) barrier (reviewed in Johansson et al., 2008). CSF is the fluid that bathes the brain and the spinal cord and fills the ventricles. The choroid plexuses are responsible for the secretion of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), regulating which molecules enter the CSF from the blood. The ventricle-CSF system functions during development and adulthood to provide physical protection for the brain and acts as a circulatory system, removing metabolites and distributing CSF-borne signalling molecules and nutrients (reviewed in Redzic et al., 2005). During development, the choroid plexuses secrete various growth factors and signalling molecules that stimulate the proliferation or differentiation of neural progenitors (Yamamoto et al., 1996; Redzic et al., 2005; Huang et al., 2010; Lehtinen et al., 2011). The telencephalic
choroid plexus has also been implicated in secreting chemorepulsive molecules, which function to orient neuronal migration (Hu, 1999; Nguyen-Ba-Charvet et al., 2004). Thus the choroid plexuses are important regulators of the internal environment of the brain and secrete molecules that are involved in patterning the development of the brain.

The choroid plexus is composed of two components: the choroid plexus epithelium and the heavily vascularised choroidal stroma. Early histological studies of mammals and other amniotes defined four stages of choroid plexus development on the basis of epithelial cell morphology and the glycogen content of cells (Dohrmann, 1970; Jacobsen et al., 1982; Dziegielewska et al., 2001). In summary, the pseudostratified epithelium of the roof plate invaginates and transforms into cuboidal epithelium known as choroid plexus epithelium, which undergoes complex morphological changes to form choroidal villi (reviewed in Dziegielewska et al., 2001). During this process of epithelial transformation both ingrowth of blood vessels and capillaries and angiogenesis within the choroidal stroma occurs (Strong, 1956; Dohrmann, 1970). In addition to changes in morphology the differentiation of choroid plexus epithelium can also be monitored by the expression of the transthyretin (ttr) gene, which encodes a thyroxine-binding protein (Thomas et al., 1988). In rat, ttr expression is first detected in the fourth ventricle, followed by the lateral and then the third ventricle choroid plexus epithelium (Thomas et al., 1988). In the fourth ventricle, ttr expression and patches of vascularisation appear in two lateral domains that later fuse to form a highly convoluted and vascularised structure at the midline of the roof plate that is symmetrical about the midline.

Recently genetic fate mapping studies in mice have shown that most, if not all of the fourth ventricle choroid plexus epithelium is derived from gdf7-positive, wnt1-positive progenitor pools at the lateral edges of the roof plate epithelium (the most dorsal neuroepithelium) (Awatramani et al., 2003; Currie et al., 2005; Landsberg et al., 2005; Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). These progenitor pools initially give rise to roof plate epithelium, which later transforms into choroid plexus epithelium. An elegant genetic fate-mapping study by Hunter and Dymecki (2007) described how the E11.5 roof plate epithelium can be subdivided into two domains, one medial and one lateral, with respect to whether they arose from wnt1-positive or wnt1 and gdf7-positive progenitors, and whether they would contribute to the choroid plexus (Figure 1-6). Although initially the lateral progenitor domains contribute to roof plate epithelium that then transforms into choroid plexus epithelium, from E12.5 and throughout development, the lateral progenitor domains contribute directly to the choroid plexus epithelium (Hunter and Dymecki, 2007; Huang et al., 2009). At these stages the lateral progenitor pool is regulated by shh expressed by the choroid plexus epithelium itself.
Figure 1-6 Subdivision of the roof plate epithelium into a medial and a lateral domain

Schematised diagram of a dorsal view of the mouse E11.5 roof plate epithelium showing subdivision into a medial (med) and a lateral (lat) domain. The medial domain (green) is derived from wnt1-positive progenitors and does not contribute to the choroid plexus epithelium (CPE), while the lateral domain (purple) is derived from gdf7-positive and wnt1-positive progenitors and does contribute to the CPE. Medial and lateral domains are non-mitotic so growth occurs via proliferation of progenitors at the lateral edges of the roof plate epithelium (grey lines). The rhombic lips (red) are subdivided into the upper rhombic lip (URL) and the lower rhombic lip (LRL).
Thus the choroid plexus epithelium stimulates its own growth at later stages.

The diencephalic choroid plexus epithelium also arises from gdf7-positive progenitors, however only the anterior portion of the telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium receives contributions from gdf7-positive progenitors (Currle et al., 2005). Interestingly, the posterior portion of the telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium requires non-autonomous signals from the anterior portion for its development (Currle et al., 2005). These signals are likely to be BMPs as the BMP-responsive gene, msx1 is downregulated in the posterior telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium after the ablation of the gdf7-positive progenitor-derived anterior domain (Currle et al., 2005).

Recent time-lapse studies of zebrafish choroid plexus development gave detailed insights into the process of choroid plexus epithelium differentiation and blood vessel ingrowth in zebrafish (Bill et al., 2008; Garcia-Lecea et al., 2008). Garcia-Lecea et al. (2008) described this process in three phases. In the first two phases the tela choroidea, a monolayered epithelial sheet, formed from the roof plate of the fourth ventricle and was contributed to by cells emerging from the rhombic lip. The third phase consisted of the tela choroidal cells converging on a distinct point forming a tight, rounded structure that obeyed anteroposterior and mediolateral boundaries. A choroidal vascular circuit dorsal to the choroid plexus epithelium also formed in this third stage via the branching of the dorsal longitudinal vein. Garcia-Lecea et al. 2008 did not observe any sprouting of capillaries from the choroidal vascular circuit into the choroid plexus epithelium, however Bill et al. 2008 have reported that this does occur. Whether these capillaries are orthologous to the fenestrated capillaries found in amniote choroid plexuses remains to be determined. De novo angiogenesis, as occurs in the developing amniote choroid plexus (Dohrmann, 1970), was not observed to contribute to the formation of the zebrafish choroid plexus capillary bed. Another difference between zebrafish and mammalian fourth ventricle choroid plexus development is that the mammalian choroid plexus differentiates from two lateral domains that later fuse, whereas the zebrafish choroid plexus epithelium differentiates at the midline of the roof of the fourth ventricle (Strong, 1956; Thomas et al., 1988; Bill et al., 2008; Garcia-Lecea et al., 2008).

**1.2.1 Coordination of choroid plexus development**

Despite its vital function, little is known about what mechanisms coordinate the development of the choroid plexus. It is known that the areas of the neural tube destined to give rise to choroid plexus epithelium are specified as early as E8.5 in mice, before the formation of ventricles, whereas the first choroid plexus epithelial cells differentiate at E9.5 (Thomas and Dziadek, 1993; Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). Experiments in avian embryos showed that
transplantation of E2/E3 prospective choroid plexus epithelium to the body-wall resulted in the normal differentiation of the epithelium into choroid plexus epithelium, but also induced the body-wall mesenchyme to give rise to fenestrated capillaries, typical of the choroid plexus (Wilting and Christ, 1989). However the converse was not true. The transplantation of non-choroid plexus-forming neuroepithelium onto prospective choroid plexus-forming mesenchyme did not induce the differentiation of choroid plexus epithelium. These studies and the observation that gdf7-positive progenitors give rise to all of the diencephalic and hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium might lead one to conclude that all progeny of the gdf7-domain are pre-specified as choroid plexus epithelium and do not require inductive signals from external tissues. However, the timing of differentiation of the choroid plexus epithelium must still be regulated. Additionally the above is not sufficient to explain how the posterior portion of the telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium, which does not arise from gdf7-positive progenitors, develops (Currle et al., 2005). Indeed Currle et al. (2005) have shown that the posterior portion of the telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium requires non-autonomous signals (probably Bmps) from the anterior portion. It would be interesting to see if any non-autonomous signals are required for the early differentiation of the diencephalic and hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium.

As stated above, the prospective choroid plexus epithelium could induce the formation of organ-typical capillaries from body-wall mesenchyme in avian embryos (Wilting and Christ, 1989), however the signal responsible for this induction has yet to be determined. It has been shown that shh from the choroid plexus epithelium is required for vascular outgrowth in the mouse fourth ventricle choroid plexus (Nielsen and Dymecki, 2010). However organ-typical blood vessels are still present within the choroid plexus of shh mutant mice so this signal is not required for the original ingrowth of blood vessels and the specification of organ-typical capillaries. Thus the signals involved in the promotion of blood vessel ingrowth and the specification of choroid plexus capillaries have yet to be defined.

1.3 Re-examining the organiser properties of the roof plate

As detailed above most secondary organisers in the developing CNS are boundaries between two molecularly distinguishable compartments. The roof plate and the floor plate do not fit into this model; at spinal cord levels the roof plate and floor plate are boundaries between molecularly indistinguishable compartments (the two halves of the neural tube), and at the brain ventricles the roof plate is expanded to form an epithelial sheet that tents over the ventricle. This is most obvious at the fourth ventricle where the roof plate forms a large diamond shape (Figure 1-4 B). Furthermore, the roof plate of the ventricles gives rise to choroid plexus epithelium, however the consequence of this for its organiser function has not
been assessed. In this thesis I considered the hypothesis that the organiser properties of the roof plate are situated at its boundaries with the neuroepithelium. In order to study this I focussed on the chick fourth ventricle roof plate as the roof plate is greatly expanded at this location and therefore provides an easily accessible region for experimental manipulation of its boundaries. Through my consideration that the organiser properties of the hindbrain roof plate are located at its boundaries it was discovered that the roof plate boundaries contribute non-autonomous signals required for choroid plexus epithelium development.
Chapter 2 A study of gene expression patterns at the hindbrain roof plate boundary

2.1 Background

The roof plate is an organiser present at the dorsal midline of the neural tube along the entire antero-posterior axis of the CNS (reviewed in Chizhikov and Millen, 2005). The function of the roof plate as an organiser has been best studied in the spinal cord where genetic deletion experiments led to a loss of the three dorsal-most groups of neuronal cell types (dI1-3) and their progenitor domains (marked by math1 and ngn1). This was accompanied by a compensatory increase in the more ventral neuronal types (dI4-6) and the mash1 (mouse achaete-scute homolog 1) -positive progenitor domain (Lee et al., 2000a). The main candidates for the dorsalising signals emitted by the roof plate are BMP and Wnt proteins, which are strongly expressed along its entire extent.

In the chick, the ability of the roof plate to induce dorsal neuronal cell types has been shown to be mimicked by the application of roof plate-expressed BMP family members such as Bmp4, Bmp5, Bmp6, Bmp7 and Gdf7 (also known as Bmp12) (Liem et al., 1997; Lee et al., 1998; Chizhikov and Millen, 2004a). Further application of the Bmp inhibitors Noggin and Follistatin inhibited the ability of the roof plate to induce dorsal interneurons in vitro (Liem et al., 1997; Lee et al., 1998). Electroporation studies in chick have shown that expansion of the roof plate by overexpression of Lmx1b can induce dI1 neurons adjacent to the expanded roof plate, at the expense of dI2 – 6 interneurons, and that this signalling capacity was mediated by Bmp signalling (Chizhikov and Millen, 2004a). Conversely, knockdown of smad4, an essential downstream signal transduction component of BMP signalling, resulted in a reduction of dI1-3 interneurons and their progenitor domains, but an expansion of dI4-6 and their progenitor domains (Chesnutt et al., 2004). Genetic deletion studies in mice have not revealed much of a role for individual Bmps in specification of dorsal neural cell types, presumably due to the redundancy between Bmp family members (Chizhikov and Millen, 2005). However, genetic loss of gdf7 results in a loss of a specific subset of dI1 interneurons (formerly known as D1A) in mouse (Lee et al., 1998). Thus Bmp signals, and particularly gdf7 in mice, are necessary and sufficient for the specification of dorsal interneuron cell types in chick and mouse.

The Wnt signals, Wnt1 and Wnt3a are specifically expressed in the spinal cord roof plate and were previously thought to play a mostly mitogenic rather than a patterning role in the development of the dorsal spinal cord (Dickinson et al., 1994; Megason and McMahon,
2002; Chesnutt et al., 2004). However, in mouse it was shown that genetic knockdown of \textit{wnt1} and \textit{wnt3a} caused a specific reduction in dI1-3 neurons with a compensatory increase in more ventral interneurons (Muroyama et al., 2002). Further, application of Wnt3a to the medial region of the chick neural plate could induce dI1 and dI2 neuronal production, without the involvement of BMP signalling. More recently it has also been demonstrated in chick and zebrafish embryos that Wnt signalling is required for the dorsoventral patterning of the spinal cord (Alvarez-Medina et al., 2008; Bonner et al., 2008). Alvarez-Medina et al. (2008) showed that co-electroporation of \textit{wnt1} and \textit{wnt3a} in the chick caused a ventral expansion of dorsal progenitor domains and dI2-4 interneuron populations at the expense of the more ventral dI6 interneurons, ventral V0 – 1 interneurons and motor neurons. Wnt1/ Wnt3a were shown to antagonise Shh signalling to orchestrate the dorsoventral patterning of the spinal cord neural tube. Thus in chick and mouse embryos Wnt1 and Wnt3a play important roles in dorsoventral patterning of the spinal cord.

Previous work has shown that organisers in the developing vertebrate CNS are generally located at boundaries between compartments of tissue that are molecularly distinguishable from each other, for example the isthmus at the midbrain-hindbrain boundary, the zona limitans intrathalamica (ZLI) at the pre-thalamus – thalamus boundary and the rhombomere boundaries (Kiecker and Lumsden, 2005). For the most part, the roof plate is comprised of a narrow strip of cells at the dorsal midline that separates two molecularly indistinguishable halves of the neural tube, for example at spinal cord or midbrain level (Chizhikov and Millen, 2004c; Chizhikov and Millen, 2005). However at certain locations such as the hindbrain the roof plate is expanded to form a thin epithelium that tents over a ventricle. Thus the hindbrain provides a particularly amenable region to study whether roof plate organiser properties are localised to its boundaries and hence whether the roof plate also conforms to the model stated above.

At hindbrain level, the roof plate has been shown in the mouse to be required specifically for the specification of the dorsal-most neural progenitor pool of rhombomere 1, which is marked by Math1, while it is only required to regulate proliferation of more ventral cell-types (Chizhikov et al., 2006). Ectopic roof plate was also sufficient to induce or expand the Math1 domain, and Chizhikov et al. (2006) showed that this induction was dependent on BMP signals. Previous studies have also demonstrated the importance of BMP family members in the induction of Math1-positive cells as Gdf7, Bmp6 and Bmp7 can induce Math1-positive cells \textit{in vitro} and the BMP receptors, Bmpr1a and Bmpr1b, are required in a redundant fashion for the specification of the cerebellar granule cells (derived from Math1-positive progenitors), but not the Purkinje cells, which are derived from the slightly more
ventrolateral Ptf1a-positive progenitor pool of the rhombomere 1-derived cerebellar anlage (Alder et al., 1999; Wingate and Hatten, 1999; Chizhikov et al., 2006; Qin et al., 2006).

The hindbrain roof plate is not only an organiser, but it also gives rise to the hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium later in development (reviewed in Dziegielewska et al., 2001). The choroid plexuses are a series of interfaces that contribute to the ‘blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier’ and are essential for the secretion of cerebrospinal fluid (Dziegielewska et al., 2001; Redzic et al., 2005). Thus they are essential for the regulation of the internal environment of the developing brain. Despite their importance, the development of the chick choroid plexuses has not been well documented.

In this chapter, I describe in hindbrain the expression of mRNA of candidate roof plate signalling molecules, Notch signalling pathway components and markers of the developing choroid plexus. I find that the expression of gdf7 in the chick definitively marks the hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium boundary from E3 until at least E6 (the latest age analysed) and that this expression pattern might be explained by the distribution of Notch signalling pathway components and chick hes1 orthologues. The development of the chick hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium from the roof plate epithelium was assessed by the expression patterns of: transthyretin (ttr), a thyroxine-binding protein that represents a well-established marker of the differentiated choroid plexus epithelium (Thomas et al., 1988; Duan et al., 1991), cytochrome P450 26C1 (cyp26C1), which encodes a retinoic acid metabolising enzyme that is strongly expressed in the hindbrain roof plate epithelium in chick (Reijntjes et al., 2004; Wilson et al., 2007) and orthodenticle homeobox 2 (otx2), which encodes a homeodomain-containing transcription factor that has been shown to be expressed in the mouse and chick telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium (Shinozaki et al., 2004; von Frowein et al., 2006). These expression patterns showed that the chick choroid plexus epithelium differentiates at E4 in a specific pattern within the hindbrain roof plate, but also that cyp26C1 expression marks sites of prospective choroid plexus epithelium differentiation.
2.2 Results

2.2.1 \textit{gdf7} expression marks the boundaries between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium in chick

In the chick, \textit{gdf7} is specifically expressed by the roof plate at the dorsal midline of the neural tube from E3, and is still expressed at E6 (the latest stage examined). In the midbrain it can be seen as a double stripe at the dorsal midline (Figure 2-1 A, C arrowheads), whereas at the hindbrain it marks the boundary between the hindbrain neuroepithelium and the expanded roof plate epithelium persistently from E3 to E6 (the latest stage examined), at the level of both the upper and lower rhombic lip (Figure 2-1 A – H, arrows). This can be seen more clearly by taking transverse sections through embryos. At the level of both the upper and lower rhombic lip at E3 and E4, \textit{gdf7} is expressed at the interface between the roof plate epithelium and the hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 2-2 A – D, G – J, arrows). More specifically, its domain of expression lies at the dorsal-most tip of the pseudostratified epithelium.

A transverse section through the spinal cord of an E3 embryo shows that \textit{gdf7} expression is present as two stripes at the dorsal midline, like in the midbrain (Figure 2-1 A, arrowhead, Figure 2-2 E, F). Three \textit{gdf7}-negative cells can be seen separating the two domains of \textit{gdf7} expression (Figure 2-2 F open arrow). A section through the midbrain of an E4 embryo again shows \textit{gdf7} expression at the dorsal midline, but in this section a \textit{gdf7}-negative zone at the medial roof plate is not visible even though \textit{gdf7} also appears as two stripes in the midbrain at E4 by whole-mount \textit{in situ} hybridisation (Figure 2-1C arrowhead, Figure 2-2 K, L). This may be due to the thickness of the section (40µm) being too high to discern the small number of \textit{gdf7}-negative cells.

\textit{gdf7} expression at the hindbrain roof plate-boundary is immediately adjacent to the dorsal-most neural progenitor domain, which is marked by the expression of \textit{cath1} (Figure 2-2 M – P). Cells do not co-express these markers, which is consistent with the \textit{gdf7} and \textit{math1} (the mouse homolog of \textit{cath1}) lineage-tracing mice, which show that \textit{gdf7}-expressing progenitors only give rise to roof plate, whereas \textit{math1}-expressing progenitors only give rise to neurons (Landsberg et al., 2005; Machold and Fishell, 2005; Wang et al., 2005; Hunter and Dymecki, 2007).

As \textit{gdf7} marks an inducer of the \textit{math1}-positive neural progenitor pool in mice (Alder et al., 1999; Lee et al., 2000a; Chizhikov et al., 2006) I hypothesised that its expression must precede that of \textit{cath1} in chick embryos. To investigate this I examined the expression of \textit{gdf7} in relation to \textit{cath1} in the hindbrain of embryos from st10 (E2) (just after neural tube
Figure 2-1 Whole-mount gdf7 expression in E3 – E6 chick embryos

gdf7 expression as detected by whole-mount in situ hybridisation in E3 (A,B), E4 (C,D), E5 (E,F) and E6 (G,H) chicken embryos. A,C,E,G show dorsal views. B,D,F,H show lateral views. Anterior is to the left. Arrowheads indicate midbrain gdf7 expression. Arrows in A, C, E, G indicate gdf7 expression at upper rhombic lip level. Arrows in B, D, E, H indicate gdf7 expression at lower rhombic lip level.
Figure 2-2 *gdf7* expression in chicken hindbrains sectioned in the transverse plane

A – F show sections through an E3 embryo. G – P show sections through E4 embryos. A – M and O show *gdf7* expression as detected by *in situ* hybridisation. N and P show *gdf7* and *cath1* expression as detected by double *in situ* hybridisation. A – L are vibrotome sections of embryos processed by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation. M – P are serial cryostat sections that were processed for in situ hybridisation. Dorsal is oriented upwards. Arrows indicate *gdf7* expression at the hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium interface. Open arrow indicates *gdf7*-negative domain in spinal cord roof plate. URL: upper rhombic lip, LRL: lower rhombic lip, SpC: Spinal Cord, Mb: midbrain.

Closure) to st17 (E3). *gdf7* and *cath1* are not expressed at st10 (Figure 2-3 A). *gdf7* begins to be expressed in the midbrain by st13 (E2) (Figure B arrow), whereas it and *cath1* expression are still absent from the hindbrain at this stage (Figure 2-3 B). *gdf7* expression begins in the hindbrain at st14 (E3) at the level of the upper rhombic lip (Figure 2-3 C arrow) but *cath1* expression is still absent at this stage. By stage 16, *cath1* begins to be expressed in the hindbrain and *gdf7* expression is clearly visible in the hindbrain and midbrain (Figure 2-3 D arrow, hindbrain; arrowhead, midbrain). By stage 17 both *gdf7* and *cath1* are expressed strongly in the hindbrain and *gdf7* expression is also visible in the diencephalon (Figure 2-3 E arrow, diencephalon).

### 2.2.2 Expression of *bmp4*, *bmp7* and *wnt1* at the hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium boundary

*Gdf7* expression was compared to that of *bmp4*, *bmp7* and *wnt1* in the chick hindbrain and midbrain roof plate first by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation. *Bmp4* is not expressed in the midbrain or hindbrain roof plate at E4 or E5 but expression is detectable in the pharyngeal arches (Figure 2-4 A – D, arrows, pharyngeal arches) (Kriebitz et al., 2009). *Bmp7* is expressed by the midbrain roof plate at E4 and E5, but is not distinguishable by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation in the hindbrain roof plate epithelium or roof plate boundary (Figure 2-4 E – G, arrowhead, midbrain roof plate). Like *bmp4*, *bmp7* expression is present in the pharyngeal arches (Figure 2-4 F arrow). *Wnt1* is clearly expressed by both the midbrain roof plate and the hindbrain roof plate boundary at E4 and E5 (Figure 2-4 I – L, arrowheads: midbrain expression, arrows: hindbrain roof plate boundary expression), although there is an antero-posterior gradient of expression along the rhombomere 1 roof plate boundary at E4 (Figure 2-4 I, open arrow).

Since *wnt1* was expressed at the hindbrain roof plate boundary I compared its expression with that of *gdf7* by performing *in situ* hybridisation on serial transverse cryostat sections from an E4 embryo. *Wnt1* is highly expressed in the *gdf7* expression domain at the level of both the upper and lower rhombic lip (Figure 2-5 B, E, arrows). However, it is also expressed at a lower level in the adjacent dorsal neuroepithelium at the level of the lower rhombic lip (Figure 2-5 E arrowhead), which is the same as in the mouse (Landsberg et al., 2005).

Since *bmp7* was clearly expressed in the midbrain roof plate at E4 and E5 but its expression could not be easily distinguished in the hindbrain roof plate I performed *in situ* hybridisation on serial transverse cryostat sections of an E4 embryo to compare the expression of *bmp7* in the hindbrain roof plate with that of *gdf7*. *Bmp7* was expressed in the roof plate epithelium and *gdf7*-domain at both upper and lower rhombic lip levels (Figure 2-5 C, F, arrows). At the
Figure 2-3 Early *gdf7* and *cath1* expression

*gdf7* and *cath1* expression (as labelled) as detected by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation at st10 (A), st13 (B), st14 (C), st16 (D), st17 (E). A – C show dorsal views with anterior to the left. D, E show lateral views with anterior to the right. B, arrow, midbrain *gdf7* expression. C, arrow, upper rhombic lip *gdf7* expression. D, arrows indicate hindbrain *gdf7* or *cath1* expression as indicated; arrowhead, midbrain *gdf7* expression. E, arrow, diencephalic *gdf7* expression.
Figure 2-4 Whole-mount expression of \textit{bmp4}, \textit{bmp7} and \textit{wnt1} in E4 and E5 embryos

Figure 2-5 Expression domains of wnt1 and bmp7 in comparison with that of gdf7

Expression of gdf7 (A, D), wnt1 (B, E) and bmp7 (C, F) as detected by in situ hybridisation performed on transverse, serial cryostat sections through the upper rhombic lip (A – C) or lower rhombic lip (D – F) of an E4 embryo. B, E, arrows, wnt1 expression at the roof plate boundary. C, F, arrows, roof plate bmp7 expression. E, arrowhead, dorsal neuroepithelium wnt1 expression. F, arrowhead, dorsal neuroepithelium bmp7 expression, open arrow, epidermis bmp7 expression. URL: upper rhombic lip, LRL: lower rhombic lip.
lower rhombic lip it was also expressed in the neuroepithelium and was detected in the epidermis (Figure 2-5 F, arrowhead, neuroepithelium; open arrow, epidermis).

Thus of the morphogenetic proteins \textit{bmp4}, \textit{bmp7}, \textit{wnt1} and \textit{gdf7}, \textit{gdf7} was the most specific marker of the hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium boundary in chick, although \textit{wnt1} also exhibited a very similar expression pattern, with the exceptions of its antero-posterior graded expression at upper rhombic lip level and the low level expression domain in the adjacent neuroepithelium at lower rhombic lip level.

2.2.3 The chick \textit{hes1} orthologues, \textit{chairy1} and \textit{chairy2} are persistently expressed at high levels at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary

In mice Hairy/ Enhancer of split 1 (Hes1), which is a repressor-type bHLH transcription factor, is highly and persistently expressed at boundary-localised signalling centres in the developing central nervous system (Baek et al., 2006). \textit{chairy1} and \textit{chairy2} are the chick orthologues of \textit{hes1}(Jouve et al., 2000) so their expression at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary was examined to see if this boundary was also marked by characterised markers of boundary-localised signalling centres.

At stage 11 (E2), a diamond of high \textit{chairy1} expression is visible in the prospective hindbrain (Figure 2-6 B arrow) as well as in the rest of the neuroepithelium, the presomitic mesoderm and Hensen’s node (Figure 2-6 A, arrowheads: neuroepithelium, open arrowhead: presomitic mesoderm, open arrow: Hensen’s node). At stage 11, \textit{chairy2} is expressed fairly ubiquitously throughout the neural tube, but like \textit{chairy1} it is also expressed in the presomitic mesoderm and Hensen’s node (Figure 2-6 C, D, arrowheads: neural tube, open arrowhead: presomitic mesoderm, open arrow: Hensen’s node).

By stage 18 (E3) \textit{chairy1} expression clearly marks the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary as well as the floor plate (Figure 2-6 E, F, arrows: roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, arrowhead: floor plate). \textit{chairy1} is also expressed in two uneven stripes along the antero-posterior axis in the hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 2-6 E, open arrowheads). At this stage, \textit{chairy2} is expressed throughout the neuroepithelium and an elevated level of expression at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary is not yet apparent (Figure 2-6 H). A lack of expression at the dorsal midline of the midbrain and in the floor plate is apparent, as are two stripes of elevated \textit{chairy2} expression in the hindbrain neuroepithelium, similar to those of \textit{chairy1} (Figure 2-6 G open arrow: midbrain roof plate, arrowhead: floor plate, open arrowheads: stripes of elevated \textit{chairy2} expression).
**Figure 2-6 Whole-mount expression of chairy1 and chairy2 from st11 (E2) to E6**

At E4 *chairy1* expression still marks the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary and the floor plate (Figure 2-6 I, J arrow: roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, arrowhead: floor plate). Expression in the longitudinal hindbrain stripes has become more even along the antero-posterior axis and extends into rhombomere one by this stage (Figure 2-6 I, J, open arrowheads: longitudinal hindbrain stripes, open arrow: longitudinal hindbrain stripe in rhombomere 1). There is clearly no expression of *chairy1* in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-6 J red arrow).

By E4, *chairy2* is expressed throughout the hindbrain neuroepithelium but now shows elevated expression at the boundaries of the floor plate and at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary (Figure 2-6 K, L, arrowhead: floor plate boundary, arrow: roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary). The domain of elevated *chairy2* expression is broader than the expression domain of *chairy1* at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary. Like *chairy1*, *chairy2* also shows two longitudinal stripes of elevated expression in the hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 2-6 K open arrowheads). *chairy2* is not expressed in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-6 L red arrow).

E5 *chairy1* expression is very similar to E4 expression. *chairy1* is expressed in the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary and in the floor plate, as well as the longitudinal hindbrain stripes (Figure 2-6 M, N, arrow: roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, arrowhead: floor plate, open arrowheads: longitudinal hindbrain stripes). E5 *chairy2* expression is also very similar to E4 expression. It too still shows upregulated expression at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary and in the hindbrain longitudinal stripes (Figure 2-6 O, P, arrow: roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, open arrowheads: longitudinal hindbrain stripes), although the elevated expression at the floor plate boundaries is less apparent at this stage (Figure 2-6 O).

By E6, similar expression patterns for *chairy1* and *chairy2* still exist. *chairy1* is expressed highly at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, the floor plate and the two longitudinal hindbrain stripes (Figure 2-6 Q, arrows: roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, arrowhead: floor plate, open arrowheads: longitudinal hindbrain stripes). *chairy2* is expressed highly at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary (Figure 2-6 R arrows). It is still expressed throughout the hindbrain neuroepithelium but slightly elevated levels of expression at the longitudinal hindbrain stripes and at the floor plate boundaries can be seen (Figure 2-6 R, arrowhead: floor plate boundaries, open arrows: longitudinal hindbrain stripes).
In order to determine more clearly the expression domains of *chairy1* and *chairy2*, I looked at their expression in transverse sections through E4 embryos. Elevated expression of *chairy1* and *chairy2* at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary can be seen at both upper and lower rhombic lip levels in vibrotome sections (Figure 2-7 A – F, arrows). *chairy1* is also expressed in the floor plate and in a longitudinal hindbrain stripe (Figure 2-7 B, arrowhead: floor plate, open arrowhead: longitudinal hindbrain stripe).

*chairy2* expression in the floor plate boundaries can be seen, and sections through the lower rhombic lip show that the longitudinal hindbrain stripe of *chairy2* expression is broader than that of *chairy1* (Figure 2-7 E, arrowhead: floor plate boundary, open arrowhead: longitudinal hindbrain stripe).

Despite *chairy1* and *chairy2* being clearly expressed at high levels at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, it was not clear how their expression patterns related to the *gdf7*-positive domain. In order to assess this, I took serial cryostat sections through the upper and lower rhombic lips of an E4 embryo and detected the expression of *chairy1*, *chairy2*, and *gdf7* using *in situ* hybridisation on the serial sections. Sections through the upper rhombic lip clearly show upregulated expression of *chairy1* and *chairy2* within the *gdf7*-domain in comparison with expression in the adjacent neuroepithelium (Figure 2-7 G, arrows). At lower rhombic lip level, *chairy1* is clearly expressed in the *gdf7*-domain, however *chairy2* is expressed more ubiquitously in the hindbrain neuroepithelium with only a slight upregulation at the *gdf7*-domain in these sections (Figure 2-7 H, arrows).

In order to more closely assess the expression of *chairy2* in relation to *gdf7*, I carried out double *in situ* hybridisation for *chairy2* and *gdf7* on cryostat sections through the E4 upper and lower rhombic lips. This shows more clearly that *chairy2* is upregulated within the *gdf7*-positive domain at both upper and lower rhombic lip levels. (Figure 2-7 I – L, brackets: domain of upregulated *chairy2* expression within the *gdf7*-domain).

These results show that *chairy1* marks the *gdf7* – domain in the E4 hindbrain, as well as the floor plate. It is also expressed in two longitudinal stripes in the hindbrain neuroepithelium. *chairy2* is expressed at a low level throughout the hindbrain neuroepithelium at E4 but shows upregulated expression at the *gdf7*-domain, the floor plate boundaries and two longitudinal stripes in the hindbrain neuroepithelium.
Figure 2-7 Expression of *chairy1* and *chairy2* in sections through the E4 upper and lower rhombic lips

A – F show transverse vibrotome sections through E4 chick embryos where the expression of *chairy1* (A – C) or *chairy2* (D – F) had been detected by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation. A and D show sections through the upper rhombic lip. B, C, E, F show sections through the lower rhombic lip. G and H show serial transverse cryostat sections through the upper (G) or lower rhombic lip (H) of an E4 chick embryo. The expression of *gdf7*, *chairy1* or *chairy2* (as labelled) was detected by *in situ* hybridisation on sections. I – L show transverse cryostat sections through the upper (I, J) and lower rhombic lips (K, L) of an E4 embryo. The expression of *chairy2* and *gdf7* are detected by double *in situ* hybridisation on sections. I and K show the expression of both genes, whereas J and L show the immune-fluorescence detection of *chairy2* expression alone. Dorsal is oriented upwards in all images. Arrows, hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium boundary. B, arrowhead, floor plate expression. E, arrowhead, floor plate boundary expression. B, E, open arrowheads, longitudinal hindbrain stripes.

Scale bars: A, B, D, E: 100µm, C, F – L: 50µm.
2.2.4 Expression of Notch receptors, ligands and downstream targets at the roof plate boundary

*hes1* is a well-known downstream target of Notch signalling, although it has also been shown to be activated by Notch-independent pathways (Ohtsuka et al., 1999; Kageyama et al., 2007; Wall et al., 2009; Sanalkumar et al., 2010). Thus, upregulated expression of the chick *hes1* orthologues at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary suggested that Notch signalling might be activated at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary. To investigate this, the expression of various Notch ligands, receptors and modulators was examined at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary.

Figure 2-8 A shows the expression of the Notch receptors, *notch1* and *notch2* in transverse, serial cryostat sections through the upper rhombic lip at E5. *notch1* is expressed in the ventricular zone of the hindbrain neuroepithelium but is downregulated in the *gdf7*-positive domain (Figure 2-8 A arrowhead). In contrast, *notch2* is highly expressed in the *gdf7*-positive domain (Figure 2-8 A arrow) and is also expressed in the more medial roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-8 A open arrow), whereas *notch1* is not expressed in the roof plate epithelium.

Figure 2-8 B shows the expression of the Notch ligands, *delta1* and *serrate1* in comparison with the expression of *gdf7*. *delta1* is expressed in a salt and pepper fashion in the ventricular zone of the hindbrain neuroepithelium in a domain abutting the *gdf7*-domain. There is an enrichment of expression in a border directly adjacent to the *gdf7*-domain (Figure 2-8 B arrow). *serrate1* is expressed highly within the *gdf7*-domain (Figure 2-8 B open arrow) but also in a domain adjacent to the *gdf7*-domain within the neuroepithelium (Figure 2-8 arrowhead).

Figure 2-8 C shows the expression of *lfng* in comparison with that of *gdf7*. *lfng* is expressed in a similar domain to *delta1*, although it is expressed in a continuous fashion in the ventricular zone, rather than a salt and pepper fashion. It is also expressed adjacent to the *gdf7*-domain and not within it.

The expression patterns of the Notch ligands, receptors and *lfng* at the level of the lower rhombic lip at E5 are very similar to those at upper rhombic lip level (Figure 2-8 D, E). *notch1* is again downregulated within the *gdf7*-domain (Figure 2-8 D arrowhead), but expressed throughout the ventricular zone of the hindbrain neuroepithelium. *notch2* is again expressed at a high level within the *gdf7*-domain (Figure 2-8 D arrow) and is expressed in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-8 D open arrow).
<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>gdf7</td>
<td>notch1</td>
<td>notch2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>gdf7</td>
<td>delta1</td>
<td>gdf7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>gdf7</td>
<td>Ifng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>gdf7</td>
<td>notch1</td>
<td>gdf7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>gdf7</td>
<td>delta1</td>
<td>serrate1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>notch1</td>
<td>notch2</td>
<td>delta1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 2-8 Expression of Notch pathway ligands, receptors and modulators at the roof plate boundary

*In situ* hybridisation on transverse serial cryostat sections from E5 embryos through the upper rhombic lip (A – C) and the lower rhombic lip (D - F) to compare the expression domain of *gdf7* with that of the Notch receptors *notch1* and *notch2* (A, D and F as labelled), that of the Notch ligands, *delta1* and *serrate1* (B, E and F as labelled), or that of the *lfng* (C, E and F as labelled). Dorsal is oriented upwards. A, D, arrowheads, downregulated *notch1* expression in the *gdf7*-domain; arrows, upregulated *notch2* expression in the *gdf7*-domain; open arrows, roof plate epithelium *notch2* expression. B. E. arrows, border of *delta1* expression; open arrows, *serrate1* expression in the *gdf7*-domain; arrowheads, *serrate1* expression in the neuroepithelium. E, open arrowhead, lack of *lfng* expression in the *gdf7*-domain. F, arrow, floor plate *notch2* expression; arrowheads, lack of floor plate *delta1* and *serrate1* expression; open arrows, coincidental sites of *delta1* and *serrate1* expression; open arrowhead, floor plate *lfng* expression.

Scale bars: A – E, 50µm; F, 250µm.
delta1 is expressed in a salt and pepper pattern in the ventricular zone of the hindbrain neuroepithelium in a domain abutting the gdf7-expression domain. It shows a sharp boundary of expression adjacent to the gdf7-expression domain (Figure 2-8 E arrow). serrate1 shows elevated expression in the ventricular zone of the hindbrain in a domain adjacent to the gdf7-expression domain (Figure 2-8 E arrowhead), and shows downregulated expression within the gdf7-domain itself (Figure 2-8 E open arrow). lfng is highly expressed throughout the ventricular zone of the hindbrain neuroepithelium up until the gdf7-domain. It is not expressed within the gdf7-domain (Figure 2-8 E open arrowhead).

Sections at lower rhombic lip level also show that notch1 and notch2 are expressed along the entire dorsoventral axis of the neuroepithelium, in the ventricular zone, but notch1 expression is excluded from the floor plate, while notch2 expression is upregulated within the floor plate (Figure 2-8 F, arrow). delta1 and serrate1 show mostly complementary expression within the ventricular zone of the neuroepithelium, except for expression adjacent to the floor plate and the roof plate (Figure 2-8 F, open arrows). Note that neither delta1 nor serrate1 are expressed within the floor plate (Figure 2-8, arrowheads).

lfng is expressed in a very similar manner to delta1 except that it is expressed slightly in the floor plate (Figure 2-8 F, open arrowhead).

2.2.5 The expression of hindbrain roof plate epithelium and choroid plexus epithelium markers from E3 – E7

The hindbrain roof plate epithelium is distinguishable from E3 in chick. ttr is expressed in the extraembryonic membranes and the liver at E3 (Figure 2-9 A arrow, liver). Expression in the hindbrain roof plate does not begin until E4 (st20), when patches of ttr-expressing cells appear in two lateral domains of the hindbrain roof plate, mostly in the lower roof plate (Figure 2-9 B, arrow). More ttr-expressing cells appear as development proceeds through E4, with more ttr-expressing cells appearing in the upper roof plate (Figure 2-9 B – E arrowhead). This suggests that the anterior hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium differentiates later than the posterior domain, which is in line with findings in mouse embryos (Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). ttr expression begins in a few scattered cells in the diencephalic choroid plexus epithelium at E4 (st23) (Figure 2-9 F, F’, arrow). Two solid lateral domains of ttr expression are apparent by E5 in the hindbrain roof plate (st26) (Figure 2-9 G). By E5, the diencephalic ttr expression marks the choroid plexus epithelium and a domain around the developing pineal gland (Figure 2-9 H, arrow, choroid plexus epithelium; arrowhead, pineal gland). By E6 (st28) cells of the medial upper roof plate have differentiated and express ttr, leaving a medial circular ttr-negative domain (Figure 2-9 I, arrow, medial anterior ttr expression). The expression domain of ttr at E7 (st30) is very similar to that at E6, with the
Figure 2-9 Expression of *transhyretin (ttr)* from st19 (E3) to st30 (E7) in whole-mount chick embryos

*Ttr* expression in st19 (E3) (A), st20 (E4) (B), st21 (E4) (C), st22 (E4) (D), st23 (E4) (E, F), st26 (E5) (G, H), st28 (E6) (I), st30 (E7) (J) chick embryos as detected by whole-mount in situ hybridisation. A is a lateral view. B – E, G, I, J are dorsal views of the hindbrain. F and H are frontal views of the diencephalon and telencephalic vesicles. F’ is a x2.5 magnification of diencephalic *ttr* expression in F indicated by an arrow. Anterior is oriented to the left in all images. A, arrow, liver. B, arrow, lower roof plate *ttr* expression. E, upper roof plate *ttr* expression. F – H arrows, diencephalic *ttr* expression. H, arrowhead, *ttr* expression around the developing pineal gland. I, arrow, medial upper roof plate *ttr* expression. J, open arrowhead, folds in the roof plate epithelium along the mediolateral axis.

Scale bars represent 400µm.
distinct medial *ttr*-negative domain still present (Figure 2-9 J). Given that the images G, I and J in Figure 2-9 are all at the same magnification, the *ttr*-negative domain decreases in size over time between E5 and E7 while the *ttr*-positive domains increase in size. Three explanations for this exist. Either the cells originally residing in the medial *ttr*-negative domain at E5 later differentiate to add to the lateral *ttr*-expression domains, the roof plate epithelium folds within the *ttr*-negative domain giving the expression that it has decreased in size, or there is selective cell death within the medial *ttr*-negative domain. Although selective cell death cannot be excluded as an explanation for the decrease in size of the medial *ttr*-negative domain, the cause of its decrease in size is unlikely to be due to folding within this domain, as folding of the roof plate epithelium mainly seems to occur along the mediolateral axis at these stages (Figure 2-9 J, open arrowhead).

cyp26C1 expression begins earlier than that of *ttr* in the hindbrain roof plate. It begins to be expressed in an upper roof plate domain and a lower roof plate domain at E3 (st15) (Figure 2-10 A, arrows, upper roof plate domain; arrowhead, lower roof plate domain). By st18, hindbrain roof plate cyp26C1 expression is still visible as separate anterior and posterior domains (Figure 2-10 B). By this stage there are also two small domains of expression visible at the dorsal midline of the diencephalon and the telencephalon, possibly demarcating future choroid plexus epithelium domains (Figure 2-10 C arrowhead, diencephalon; arrow, telencephalon). By E4 (st22), two separate upper and lower hindbrain roof plate domains of expression are no longer visible. cyp26C1 expression marks most of the roof plate epithelium, including the lateral roof plate boundaries, but like *ttr* its expression is excluded from a medial domain (Figure 2-10 D, E, arrow, cyp26C1-negative domain; arrowhead, roof plate boundary). At E4, the expression of cyp26C1 is also visible in the developing pineal gland, and in two domains of the telencephalic dorsal midline (Figure 2-10 F, arrowhead, pineal gland; arrow, telencephalic dorsal midline). By E5 (st26) the cyp26C1-negative domain has decreased in size as images G and D in Figure are at the same magnification, so cyp26C1 expression has spread medially (Figure 2-10 G, H). At this stage cyp26C1 expression is discernible in the developing pineal gland and in a domain posterior to the pineal gland (Figure 2-10 I, arrowhead, pineal gland). By E6 (st29) the hindbrain roof plate epithelium cyp26C1-negative domain has further decreased in size (Figure 2-10 J, K). By E7 (st30), cyp26C1 expression marks the choroid plexus epithelium (Figure 2-10 L, M, by comparison with Figure J), but its expression is beginning to be downregulated there. Its expression no longer marks the roof plate boundaries (Figure 2-10 M, arrows).
Figure 2-10 *cyp26C1* expression in whole-mount st15 (E3) – st30 (E7) chick embryos

Expression of *cyp26C1* as detected by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation in st15 (E3) (A), st 18 (E3) (B, C), st22 (E4) (D – F), st26 (E5) (G – I), st29 (E6) (J, K) st30 (E7) (L, M) chick embryos. A, B show lateral views of the head. C, F, I show frontal views of the diencephalon and telencephalon. D, G, J, L show dorsal views of the hindbrain. E, H, K, M show views of the ventricular surface of flat-mounted hindbrain roof plates. All images are oriented with anterior to the left apart from C, which shows anterior oriented downwards. A, arrow, upper roof plate; arrowhead, lower roof plate. C, arrowhead, diencephalon; arrow, telencephalon. E, arrow, *cyp26C1*-negative domain; arrowhead, roof plate boundary. F, arrowhead, pineal gland; arrow, telencephalon. I, arrowhead, pineal gland. M, arrows, roof plate boundaries.

Scale bar represents 400µm.
In order to further analyse the onset of *ttr* expression in relation to *cyp26C1* expression, *in situ* hybridisation with riboprobes developed with contrasting colours were performed for these genes on E4 (st21 – 23) embryos. This double *in situ* hybridisation shows that *ttr* expression marks a subset of *cyp26C1* expressing cells, in medial regions of the two lateral *cyp26C1* domains of the hindbrain roof plate (Figure A – F, arrows), with expression of *ttr* first appearing in the lower roof plate epithelium, and then appearing in the upper roof plate epithelium by st23 (Figure E, F, arrowhead). The appearance of *cyp26C1* expression also proceeds in a posterior – anterior fashion with expression in the most upper roof plate epithelium being absent at st21 (Figure B, open arrowhead).

*otx2* is highly expressed in the midbrain and diencephalon, and is expressed in the telencephalic vesicles at E4 (st22) (Figure A, B, arrowhead, midbrain; open arrow, diencephalon; open arrowhead, telencephalon), but it is also expressed highly at the lateral hindbrain roof plate boundaries and is faintly expressed in the roof plate epithelium, in a similar domain to *cyp26C1* (Figure A, arrow). At E5 (st26) *otx2* is still expressed at the hindbrain roof plate epithelium boundaries, but only shows very faint expression in the roof plate epithelium (Figure C, arrows, roof plate boundaries; arrowhead, roof plate epithelium). In the forebrain at E5 (st26), *otx2* has become downregulated in most of the telencephalon and diencephalon, but is still highly expressed in the developing pineal gland (Figure D, open arrow). At E6, *otx2* is expressed very highly at the hindbrain roof plate boundaries, but faint expression is also visible in the choroid plexus epithelium (Figure E, arrows, roof plate boundaries; arrowhead, roof plate epithelium; compare with Figure I). By E7 (st30), expression of *otx2* has become downregulated in the hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium but still persists in the anterior and anterior-lateral roof plate boundaries (Figure F, arrows).
Figure 2-11 *ttr* expression marks a subset of *cyp26C1*-expressing cells

Figure 2-12 Expression of *otx2* in the hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium

Expression of *otx2* as detected by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation in E4 (st22) (A, B), E5 (st26) (C, D), E6 (st28) (E) and E7 (st30) (F) chick embryos. A, C, E, F show dorsal views of the hindbrain. B shows a lateral view of the head. D shows a frontal view of the telencephalic vesicles and the diencephalon. Anterior is oriented to the left in all images. A – B, arrowheads, midbrain; open arrow, diencephalon; open arrowhead, telencephalon; arrow, roof plate boundary. C – F, arrows, roof plate boundaries; arrowheads, roof plate epithelium; open arrow, pineal gland.
2.3 Discussion

2.3.1 Choroid plexus epithelium development in chick

Other than being an organiser, the hindbrain roof plate also has another role in development. The roof plate epithelium differentiates into the choroid plexus epithelium, which constitutes part of the blood-brain barrier and produces cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) (Dziegielewska et al., 2001; Redzic et al., 2005). Despite its importance, its ontogenesis has not been well described in chick embryos. In this chapter the pattern of differentiation of the hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium was analysed by the appearance of ttr expression, the best described marker of differentiated choroid plexus epithelium (Thomas et al., 1988; Duan et al., 1991). ttr begins to be expressed in patches in two lateral domains in the lower roof plate epithelium at E4 (st20), but its expression proceeds anteriorly so that it is expressed in the upper roof plate epithelium by st23 (E4) (Figure 2-9, 2-11). This is homologous to the situation in the mouse where the expression of ttr in roof plate epithelium derived from rhombomeres 2 – 8 appears by E11.5, whereas expression of ttr only appears in rhombomere 1-derived roof plate epithelium by E13.5 (Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). The expression of ttr also seems to spread medially as the medial ttr-negative domain decreases in size between E5 (st26) and E7 (st30), although this could be due to selective cell death of the medial domain. The pattern of differentiation of the chick choroid plexus epithelium differs from the pattern of differentiation reported for the zebrafish. Using a GFP-tagged enhancer trap transgenic line (Gateways), Garcia-Lecea et al. (2008) showed that the choroid plexus primordium appears at the dorsal midline of the roof of the fourth ventricle at 36 hours post fertilisation (hpf) and that GFP-positive cells then coalesce between 72hpf and 144hpf to form a single circular domain that is the fourth ventricle choroid plexus. Thus, while the zebrafish choroid plexus epithelium differentiates at the dorsal midline, the chick choroid plexus epithelium differentiates in two lateral domains of the hindbrain roof plate epithelium that later fuse to form a highly convoluted and vascularised region at the midline of the roof plate (Thomas et al., 1988).

cyp26C1 was known to be expressed in the roof plate epithelium at E4 and E5 (Reijntjes et al., 2004; Wilson et al., 2007) so its expression was analysed in order to relate it to choroid plexus epithelium development. The expression domain of cyp26C1 encompasses that of ttr in the hindbrain roof plate epithelium from E4 (st21) – E6 (st29) and double in situ hybridisation analysis of E4 embryos confirms that ttr expression appears in a medial subset of cyp26C1 expressing cells, with the roof plate boundaries and an immediately adjacent roof plate epithelial domain being devoid of ttr expression (Figure 2-9, 2-10, 2-11). However, by E7, cyp26C1 expression is only detected in the choroid plexus epithelium, but
is downregulated in comparison with expression at E6 (Figure 2-10). It would be interesting to see when cyp26C1 expression stops being detected in the choroid plexus epithelium.

Thus the above analyses reveal that the chick choroid plexus differentiates in a very specific pattern within the roof plate epithelium, maturing in a posterior to anterior manner. Further, the above analyses revealed that the E4 chick roof plate epithelium can but subdivided into three distinct domains: a medial cyp26C1-negative and ttr-negative domain, a more lateral cyp26C1-positive and ttr-positive domain, and an even more lateral cyp26C1-positive, ttr-negative domain (illustrated in Figure 2-13). Thus signals, either endogenous or exogenous to the roof plate epithelium must operate to subdivide the roof plate epithelium and regulate the pattern of differentiation of the choroid plexus epithelium. Hunter and Dymecki (2007) have shown in mouse that the progeny of gdf7-expressing precursors populate the lateral domains of the roof plate epithelium but not the medial domain (see Figure 1-5) and that most, if not all, of the choroid plexus epithelium is derived from gdf7-expressing progenitors. This provides a potential autonomous mechanism for the differentiation of the lateral roof plate epithelial domains from the medial domain in the chick roof plate epithelium; however the mechanism behind the specification of the most lateral cyp26C1-positive, ttr-negative domain (margin), or the mechanism behind the posterior to anterior maturation of the choroid plexus epithelium has so far not been discovered.

cyp26C1 expression precedes that of ttr in the hindbrain roof plate epithelium, being expressed from E3 (st15) (Figure 2-10 A). Additionally, its expression precedes that of ttr at the diencephalic and telencephalic dorsal midlines, with detectable expression at st18 (Figure 2-10 C). However, diencephalic cyp26C1 expression does not encompass ttr expression at E5 (st26) as its expression is restricted to the pineal gland and an area posterior to the pineal gland, whereas ttr is expressed around the pineal gland and anterior to the pineal gland. Thus cyp26C1 may not be a marker of diencephalic choroid plexus epithelium. The choroid plexus epithelium in mouse has been shown to derive from the wnt1-positive, gdf7-positive roof plate boundary (Awatramani et al., 2003; Landsberg et al., 2005; Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). cyp26C1 is expressed at the boundary in chick, and cyp26C1 is expressed earlier than ttr in the hindbrain roof plate epithelium, diencephalic and telencephalic dorsal midlines, therefore cyp26C1 may mark cells that are destined to become choroid plexus epithelial cells. A temporally regulated genetic fate-mapping approach is required to investigate whether this is the case.
Figure 2-13 Schematic diagram of the subdivision of the E4 chick hindbrain roof plate epithelium into three domains

Diagram of the dorsal view of an E4 chick hindbrain. The roof plate epithelium can be subdivided into three domains: a lateral \textit{ttr}-negative, \textit{cyp26C1}-positive margin (blue), the differentiated choroid plexus epithelium (CPE; purple), which is \textit{ttr}-positive, \textit{cyp26C1}-positive, and a medial \textit{ttr}-negative, \textit{cyp26C1}-negative domain (yellow). The lateral roof plate boundaries (red) are \textit{gdf7}-positive and \textit{cyp26C1}-positive but \textit{ttr}-negative.
otx2 is known to be expressed by the chick and mouse telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium (Shinozaki et al., 2004; von Frowein et al., 2006), however only faint expression in the chick hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium could be detected at E6 (st28), and no expression at E7 (st30) by whole-mount in situ hybridisation (Figure 2-12). otx2 was, however, expressed highly at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary from E4 (st22) to E7 (st30), so like cyp26C1, high otx2 expression might mark hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium cell progenitors.

2.3.2 The presence of Notch ligands, receptors and downstream targets at the roof plate boundary suggests a role for Notch signalling across this boundary

Notch signalling has been shown to be responsible for the maintenance of boundary-localised organisers in developmental situations such as the dorsoventral boundary of the wing imaginal disc of Drosophila embryos or the zebrafish rhombomere boundaries (Rulifson and Blair, 1995; Rauskolb et al., 1999; Irvine and Rauskolb, 2001; Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004). It is also well known that Hes transcription factors are downstream targets of Notch signalling (Ohtsuka et al., 1999; Kageyama et al., 2008), although Notch-independent pathways of activation of hes1 have also been shown (Wall et al., 2009; Sanalkumar et al., 2010).

The chick hes1 orthologues chairy1 and chairy2 both show high levels of mRNA expression at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary from E4 – E6 (the latest stage examined) (Figure 2-6, 2-7), with chairy1 and chairy2 expression specifically upregulated within the gdf7-domain, at least at E4. chairy1 also shows specific expression at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary from E3 (st18), and may even mark the prospective roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary from E2 (st11) (Figure 2-6, A, B, E, F). These results indicate that Notch signalling might be specifically activated at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary.

Analysis of the expression patterns of Notch receptors and ligands at E5 show that Notch signalling is a good candidate to be upstream of the elevated expression of chairy1 and chairy2 at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary at this stage (Figure 2-8). Although notch1 is downregulated within the gdf7-domain and absent from the roof plate epithelium, notch2 is expressed highly within the gdf7 – domain so is a good candidate to mediate signalling there. The Notch ligands, delta1 and serrate1 are also well placed to mediate activation of Notch signalling at the roof plate boundary as they are expressed within the gdf7 domain or adjacent to it in the hindbrain neuroepithelium. delta1 shows a particularly striking boundary of expression adjacent to the gdf7 domain.
Fringe (fng) encodes a glycosyltransferase that modulates Notch activation by Delta and Serrate and is required to maintain the dorsoventral boundary of the wing imaginal disc of Drosophila larvae (Irvine and Wieschaus, 1994; Panin et al., 1997; Rauskolb et al., 1999). This boundary is located at the interface between fringe-expressing and non-expressing cells and the ectopic expression of fng in the ventral compartment can re-position the boundary (Irvine and Wieschaus, 1994). Lunatic fringe (lfng) and radical fringe (rfng) are vertebrate homologues of Drosophila fng, and boundaries between lfng-expressing and non-expressing cells and between rfng-expressing and non-expressing cells have been shown to regulate the formation of the ZLI of the chick and the apical ectodermal ridge of the chick limb bud, respectively (Laufer et al., 1997; Rodriguez-Esteban et al., 1997; Zeltser et al., 2001).

Additionally, lfng, along with serrate1 has recently been shown to be important in regulating the formation of the midbrain-hindbrain boundary of chick embryos (Tossell et al., 2011). Thus in various developmental systems, fng and its homologues play an important role in establishing boundaries at the interface between fng-expressing and non-expressing cells.

The chick roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary also lies at the interface between lfng-expressing neuroepithelial cells and non-expressing roof plate epithelial cells (Figure 2-8), which hints towards an lfng-mediated mechanism of roof plate boundary maintenance. In the examples above fng expression is generally associated with serrate expression and in Drosophila, fng acts by decreasing the efficiency of Serrate-Notch signalling but potentiating Delta-Notch signalling (Fleming et al., 1997; Panin et al., 1997).

At the chick roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, lfng is expressed in the neuroepithelium with both delta1 and serrate1 (Figure 2-8), so it will be interesting to establish how lfng is acting in this context. In a mouse cell co-culture system, Hicks et al. (2000) have shown that while Lfng inhibits Jagged1 (a mouse Serrate homologue) -mediated signalling and potentiates Delta1-mediated signalling through Notch1, it potentiates both Jagged1- and Delta1-mediated signalling via Notch2. Since notch2 is expressed at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary in chick, this could be the mechanism that mediates Notch activation at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary.

Alternatively, the pattern of expression of lfng may simply reflect its role in the maintenance of neural stem cell pools within the neural tube. Nikolaou et al. (2009) have shown that lfng is required cell-autonomously to maintain neural progenitors and prevent ectopic neurogenesis in the zebrafish hindbrain. This function of lfng appears to be conserved from zebrafish to mouse as lfng is necessary and sufficient for the maintenance of neural stem cell pools in the developing mouse cerebral cortex (Kato et al., 2010), while the overexpression of manic fringe (mfng) causes a dorsoventral domain-specific inhibition of neurogenesis in
the chick spinal cord (only within the delta1-positive progenitor domains but not within the serrate1-positive progenitor domains) (Marklund et al., 2010). Thus Ifng has an important role within the developing neural tube that is not related to boundary formation or maintenance.

Baek et al. (2006) showed that persistently high levels of expression of Hes1 marked organisers such as the MHB, ZLI, rhombomere boundaries, spinal cord roof plate and floor plate in the mouse. As stated above, the chick hes1 orthologues chairy1 and chairy2 both show high levels of mRNA expression at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary from E4 – E6 (the latest stage examined) (Figure 2-6, 2-7). Further, expression of chairy1 is excluded from the roof plate epithelium from E3 and chairy2 expression is excluded from E4 indicating that hindbrain roof plate organiser properties are localised to the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary from these stages.

Baek et al. (2006) and others have also shown that hes genes are required to maintain boundary-localised organisers in mice and in zebrafish, to prevent their ectopic neurogenesis (Geling et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005), so it is likely that chairy1 and chairy2 also play roles in maintaining the a roof plate boundary – localised organiser in chick.

2.3.3 gdf7 is a specific marker of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary in developing chick embryos

The expression patterns of Notch pathway genes and their downstream targets indicate that Notch signalling is activated at the boundary between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium. Since activated Notch signalling is known to mark many boundary-localised organisers (reviewed in Irvine and Rauskolb, 2001; Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004; Tossell et al., 2011), this indicates that the organiser properties of the hindbrain roof plate are localised to its boundaries. Indeed, in chick I found that gdf7 (an organising molecule expressed by the roof plate) is specifically expressed at the boundaries between the hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium from E3 (st14) – E6 (st28) (the latest stage examined) (Figure 2-1, 2-2, 2-3). chairy1 and chairy2 are also both specifically upregulated within the gdf7-domain at E4 (Figure 1-8). The organiser properties of the spinal cord roof plate might also be localised to its boundaries as two gdf7-positive domains are separated by a medial gdf7-negative domain there (Figure 2-2 E, F). The same situation may also apply to the midbrain roof plate as gdf7 expression there is visible as two stripes in whole-mount, although two separate domains of expression are not visible in vibrotome sections of whole-mount embryos (Figure 2-1, 2-2 K, L). This may be due to the thickness
of the section being too high to discern a small number of gdf7-negative cells there. Thus the hindbrain roof plate epithelium and the gdf7-negative domain in the spinal cord roof plate should be thought of as separate compartments of tissue from the neuroepithelium, and the organiser properties of the roof plate reside at the boundaries between the medial roof plate compartment and the neuroepithelium compartment.

The expression of gdf7 in chick differs from that in mouse embryos at the hindbrain roof plate. In mice, gdf7 is expressed highly at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary but is also expressed at a lower mRNA level within the roof plate epithelium (Chizhikov et al., 2006; Mishima et al., 2009), whereas gdf7 expression is absent from the chick hindbrain roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-1, 2-2). Nonetheless, the hindbrain roof plate of the mouse could still be divided into two domains; the roof plate epithelium and the roof plate boundaries, the latter equivalent to the gdf7-positive domain in chick. In mouse, the roof plate boundaries can be distinguished by their expression of high levels of wnt1, gdf7 and lmx1a mRNA expression at both upper and lower rhombic lip levels (Landsberg et al., 2005; Chizhikov et al., 2006).

Of other genes known to play a role in dorsoventral patterning that were analysed (bmp4, bmp7 and wnt1), only bmp7 and wnt1 were expressed in the dorsal hindbrain at E4 and E5 (Figure 2-4). Although bmp7 and wnt1 are both expressed at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, within the gdf7-domain, they are also expressed in other neural tube domains such as in the dorsal neuroepithelium (bmp7 and wnt1) and in the roof plate epithelium (bmp7) at E4 (Figure 2-5). Further, wnt1 did not mark the most anterior roof plate boundary, adjacent to the isthmus, at E4 (Figure 2-4). Thus gdf7 was the most specifically expressed at the hindbrain roof plate in chick, and was hence used as a marker of an intact roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary for the rest of my analyses and experiments.
Chapter 3 Tissue interactions and the maintenance of the 

gdf7 – positive organiser

3.1 Background

Organisers within the developing central nervous system (CNS) are often found at boundaries between molecularly distinguishable compartments (Kiecker and Lumsden, 2005). Experiments involving the recombination of compartment tissues have provided examples of boundary-localised organisers that can be regenerated at the interface between juxtaposed tissues. For example, the midbrain-hindbrain boundary can be regenerated by the juxtaposition of midbrain and rhombomere 1 tissues, as assessed by the expression of fgf8, in the chick (Irving and Mason, 1999). Likewise, Guinazu et al. (2007) showed that the zona limitans intrathalamica (ZLI) in chick can be regenerated at the interface between juxtaposed prospective pre-thalamus and the prospective thalamus, as assessed by the expression of shh (Guinazu et al., 2007). Further, although the hindbrain rhombomere boundaries have not yet been shown to be organisers in chick, their role as organisers has been alluded to by studies in zebrafish (Riley et al., 2004), and experiments have shown that rhombomere boundaries (as assessed by morphology and immunohistochemistry for molecular boundary markers such as Chondroitin Sulphate Proteoglycan (CSPG)) can be regenerated by the juxtaposition of adjacent rhombomeres, but generally not by the recombination of rhombomeres of the same type (even or odd numbered) (Guthrie and Lumsden, 1991; Heyman et al., 1995).

The studies detailed above indicated that signalling across boundaries served to either establish or maintain the boundary-localised organiser in vivo. Indeed repulsive Eph-ephrin signalling has been shown to drive cell sorting between adjacent rhombomeres, a mechanism that could underlie the initial formation of rhombomere boundaries (Mellitzer et al., 1999; Xu et al., 1999; Cooke et al., 2001; Cooke and Moens, 2002). For the midbrain-hindbrain boundary and the ZLI, Notch signalling and the Notch signalling modulator, lunatic fringe (lfng), have been shown to be important, with Notch signalling being necessary and sufficient for the positioning of midbrain-hindbrain boundary formation (Tossell et al., 2011), and lfng being important in the formation or maintenance of the ZLI (Zeltser et al., 2001).

The boundary between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium shows high and persistent expression of the chick hesl-orthologues, chairy1 and chairy2 (Figure 2-6, 2-7) (Jouve et al., 2000). Such expression of Hes1 is characteristic of boundary-localised organisers (Baek et al., 2006). In Chapter 2 it was demonstrated that gdf7 specifically marks
the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary in chick from E3 – E6 (Figure 2-1, 2-2). Therefore in this chapter I investigated whether the gdf7-positive boundary is also be maintained by signals across the boundary, another characteristic property of boundary-localised organisers. This was investigated in the same manner as detailed for the above studies; by the experimental juxtaposition of adjacent compartment tissues (in this case the hindbrain roof plate epithelium and the neuroepithelium).

3.1.1 Experimental approach
Previous studies using chick embryos have used both in vitro co-culture of adjacent compartment tissues and in vivo grafting of tissues to demonstrate regeneration of boundaries and boundary-localised organisers (Guthrie and Lumsden, 1991; Irving and Mason, 1999; Guinazu et al., 2007). The same approach can therefore be used to determine whether gdf7 expression could be induced at the interface between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium. Recent development of a green fluorescent protein (GFP)-transgenic chicken line (Helen Sang, Roslin Institute, Edinburgh) further allows the tissue origin of cells in co-cultures to be traced without any complications that might occur in cross-species experiments using chick-quail grafts (Irving and Mason, 1999; Guinazu et al., 2007), such as differences in cell affinities that might occur between tissues from different species.

gdf7 begins to be expressed at the chick roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary at E2.5 (st14) and is strongly expressed there by E3 (st16) (Figure 2-3, C, D). Therefore E3 was initially chosen as a suitable age to investigate whether gdf7 can be induced at an experimental roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium boundary, by tissue grafting experiments. Heterochronic grafting experiment of E4-derived rhombic lip tissue into the E3 roof plate epithelium was carried out because of difficulty in the accurate dissection and isolation of rhombic lip tissue from E3 embryos. Subsequent in vitro experiments co-culturing roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium were orthochronic but focussed on E4 to E6 chick hindbrains as E3 hindbrains were too difficult to accurately dissect and isolate sufficient roof plate epithelium to be used in co-culture experiments.

While gdf7 expression might give a read-out of the integrity of a recapitulated boundary, organiser activity can only be assessed by examining whether tissue adjacent to a “new” boundary can be patterned in a predictable manner. To assess this, cath1 expression was also examined using in situ hybridisation. Previous studies in mouse have shown that the hindbrain roof plate is sufficient to ectopically induce Math1 expression in early neural
tissue (Chizhikov et al., 2006), therefore I assessed whether cath1 was induced in the neuroepithelium adjacent to an induced gdf7-positive domain.

3.2 Results

3.2.1 gdf7 is induced at a roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium boundary in vivo

Heterotopic/ heterochronic grafts were carried out to determine whether gdf7 is induced at an interface between roof plate epithelium and rhombic lip neuroepithelium. Pieces of rhombic lip were isolated from E4 (st22) GFP-transgenic chick embryos and transplanted into the roof plate epithelium of E3 (st16) wild-type chick host embryos, as illustrated in Figure 3-1-1. Hosts were then incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. gdf7 was induced at the interface between grafted rhombic lip neuroepithelium and host roof plate epithelium, but was not induced when roof plate epithelium was grafted into roof plate epithelium (Figure 3-1-2 A, B, arrow; n=3/9 RLNe to RPE grafts; n=0/3 RPE to RPE grafts). However, gdf7 induction was not seen in grafts of roof plate epithelium into upper rhombic lip, or in control rhombic lip neuroepithelium into upper rhombic lip (Figure 3-1-2 C, D, n=0/3 RPE to RLNe; n=0/3 RLNe to RLNe). Ectopic cath1 expression in the hindbrain neuroepithelium was not induced by the roof plate epithelium graft (Figure 3-1-2 C, n=0/3). cath1 expression was maintained in the rhombic lip neuroepithelium graft transplanted into the upper rhombic lip (Figure 3-1-2 D, arrows, n=3/3). In contrast, when rhombic lip neuroepithelium was transplanted into the midbrain the expression of cath1 in the graft was downregulated or even absent after 24 hours (Figure 3-1-2 E, F, arrows n=2/2), implying that signals from the roof plate or surrounding upper rhombic lip tissue are required to maintain cath1 expression in the transplanted rhombic lip neuroepithelium.

3.2.2 gdf7 and cath1 are induced at a roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium interface in co-culture

Although gdf7 was induced at the interface between roof plate epithelium and rhombic lip neuroepithelium in vivo, the frequency of induction was rather low (Figure 3-1-2 A, n=3/9). Therefore a different experimental paradigm was used to investigate the induction of gdf7 at the interface between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium. Roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium were instead juxtaposed in an in vitro co-culture system, as illustrated in Figure 3-2. Hindbrains from E4, E5 and E6 chicken embryos were flat-mounted and the roof plate epithelium, gdf7- and cath1-domains were removed from both sides of the flat-mounted hindbrains. Removal of the roof plate epithelium generally completely removes the gdf7-domain, as verified by in situ hybridisation analysis of
Figure 3-1-1 Diagram illustrating the procedure of grafting RPE or RLNe into host hindbrains

A hindbrain from an E4 GFP transgenic donor embryo is flat-mounted by cutting along the dorsal midline. RPE is dissected from flat-mounted hindbrains and grafted into the RPE of hindbrains of E3 WT host embryos, for RPE to RPE grafts (as in Figure 3-1-2 B). Host embryos are then re-incubated for 24 hours prior to collection.

For RLNe to RPE grafts (as in Figure 3-1-2 A), the RPE and gdf7-positive domain are removed from flat-mounted GFP transgenic hindbrains and pieces of cath1-positive rhombic lip are isolated. Pieces of GFP-positive rhombic lip are grafted into the RPE of E3 WT host embryos. Host embryos are then re-incubated for 24 hours prior to collection.

RPE, roof plate epithelium; FP, floor plate; RLNe, rhombic lip neuroepithelium; GFP, green fluorescent protein; WT, wild-type.
Figure 3-1-2 *in vivo* induction of *gdf7* occurs in RLNe to RPE grafts

Pieces of RLNe (A) or RPE (B) from st22 GFP-transgenic chick embryos were grafted into the RPE of st16 wild-type host chick embryos, which were then incubated for 24 hours and collected at st20 for processing for whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation. *gdf7* (red) was induced at the interface between RLNe and RPE (arrow) but not at the interface between RPE and RPE. Images show flat-mounted roof plates.

Pieces of RPE (C) or RLNe (D) from st22 GFP-transgenic chick embryos were grafted into the right-hand side upper rhombic lip of st16 wild-type host chick embryos. *gdf7* (red) was not induced at the boundaries of either of these grafts. Ectopic *cath1* was not induced by the RPE graft in (C), but was maintained in the RLNe graft in D (arrows). Images show flat-mounted hindbrains

Pieces of RLNe from st22 GFP-transgenic chick embryos were grafted into the Mb of st16 wild-type host embryos (E, F). *gdf7* (red) was not induced and *cath1* (blue) expression was downregulated or not present in the grafted RLNe. Images show whole-mount embryos.

Anterior is oriented to the left. RLNe, rhombic lip neuroepithelium; RPE, roof plate epithelium; Mb, midbrain.

Scale bars: 100µm
Hindbrains from E4, E5 and E6 chicken embryos were flat-mounted by cutting along the dorsal midline. The RPE, gdf7- and cath1-domains were removed from both sides of the flat-mounted hindbrain. Other hindbrains were flat-mounted by cutting along the ventral midline. Large pieces of RPE, attached to gdf7 domain and rhombic lip were then isolated. The pieces of RPE were cultured adjacent to flat-mounted hindbrain neuroepithelium as illustrated above. These co-cultures were then incubated for 48 hours at 37°C prior to fixation and processing for whole-mount in situ hybridisation. RPE, roof plate epithelium; FP, floor plate.
hindbrains immediately after roof plate epithelium removal (Figure 3-10, 3-11). Data from Chapter 1 provided an estimate of the size of the cath1-domain. To be certain of its complete removal, the dorsal third of the neuroepithelium was removed. Pieces of roof plate epithelium were dissected from other hindbrains in the manner illustrated in Figure 3-2 and cultured adjacent to one side of the flat-mounted hindbrain neuroepithelium. The side of the hindbrain that was not cultured adjacent to the roof plate epithelium served as the control for complete removal of the gdf7 and cath1 domains. Either the hindbrain neuroepithelium or the roof plate epithelium was derived from a GFP – transgenic chick embryo, while the other component of the co-culture was derived from a wild-type chick embryo. These co-cultures were then incubated for 48 hours at 37°C at an air-liquid interface with the pial surface of the hindbrain facing upwards, on 0.4µm culture plate inserts (Millicell – CM, Millipore) that had been placed in 3mls of sterile slice media, prior to fixation and processing for whole-mount in situ hybridisation.

In explants from E4, E5 and E6 brains, cultured for 48 hours, gdf7 was induced at the interface between recombined hindbrain neuroepithelium and roof plate epithelium (Figure 3-3, 3-4, 3-5, arrows; Table 1). The expression of cath1 was also induced adjacent to induced gdf7 in explants derived from all ages (Figure 3-3, 3-4, 3-5 arrowheads), but at a lower frequency than gdf7 induction (Table 1). In explants derived from E5 and E6 brains, cath1 is also bilaterally expressed in post-mitotic neurons of the trigeminal and facial paramotor nuclei (Figure 3-4, D, E; 3-5, E – J, open arrows) (Rose et al., 2009b). In support of the findings of Thoby-Brisson et al. (2009), the expression of cath1 in paramotor nuclei is autonomous of the removal of rhombic lip at these ages suggesting that these nuclei are not derivatives of E4-6 rhombic lip. The anterior domains of cath1 expression in Figure 3-4 (E) and Figure 3-5 (H) indicated by open arrowheads have no equivalent in mice and it is so far unclear as to what cell types derive from these domains (Wingate, unpublished).

The percentage of explants that show cath1 induction adjacent to induced gdf7 decreases between E4 and E6, while the percentage showing gdf7 induction alone increases (Figure 3-6). cath1 induction was never seen without an adjacent domain of induced gdf7, therefore it is likely that the signals that induce cath1 derive from the gdf7-domain and the competence of non-rhombic lip hindbrain tissue to respond to these signals decreases between E4 and E6.
Figure 3-1 *gdf7* and *cath1* are induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe in co-cultures from E4 brains

Eight examples of co-cultures derived from E4 chick brains that were incubated for 48 hours where *gdf7* and *cath1* (A – G) or *gdf7* alone (H) are induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe. *gdf7* is in red, *cath1* is in blue. Arrows, induced *gdf7* expression; arrowheads, induced *cath1* expression. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.
Figure 3-2 *gdf7* and *cath1* are induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe in co-cultures from E5 brains

Examples of co-cultures derived from E5 chick brains that were incubated for 48 hours where *gdf7* and *cath1* (A – E) or *gdf7* alone (F, G) are induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe. *gdf7* is in blue, *cath1* is in red. Arrows, induced *gdf7* expression; arrowheads, induced *cath1* expression; open arrows, paramotor nuclei; open arrowheads, anterior domains of *cath1* expression. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.
Figure 3-3 *gdf7* and *cath1* are induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe in co-cultures from E6 brains

Examples of co-cultures derived from E6 chick brains that were incubated for 48 hours where *gdf7* and *cath1* (A, B) or *gdf7* alone (C – J) are induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe. *gdf7* is in red and *cath1* is in blue in A. *gdf7* is in blue, *cath1* is in red in B - J. Arrows, induced *gdf7* expression; arrowheads, induced *cath1* expression; open arrows, paramotor nuclei; open arrowheads, anterior domain of *cath1* expression. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.
Table 1 Frequency of gdf7 and cath1 induction in roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium co-cultures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>E4</th>
<th>E5</th>
<th>E6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdf7 and cath1 adjacent</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdf7 only</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no induction</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3-6 Percentage of explants showing either gdf7 induction or the induction of cath1 adjacent to gdf7 expression
3.2.3 *gdf7* is induced in roof plate epithelium-derived cells and *cath1* is induced in hindbrain neuroepithelium-derived cells in co-cultures

Either the roof plate epithelium or the hindbrain neuroepithelium of a co-culture was labelled by GFP. Thus the source of the cells expressing *gdf7* could be determined by comparison of *in situ* hybridisation label with immunohistochemistry for GFP. A confocal micrograph of a flat-mounted E4 co-culture shows that *gdf7* expression co-localises with GFP, which in this case marks roof plate epithelium-derived cells (Figure 3-7 A – D). Sections through E6 co-cultures as indicated in Figure 3-4 E show that *gdf7* expression co-localises with GFP – positive roof plate epithelium-derived cells (Figure 3-7 F – I, arrows). Lastly, a section through an E4 co-culture also shows that *gdf7* is induced in roof plate epithelium-derived cells, which in this case are GFP – negative (Figure 3-7 J – M, arrows). In Figure 3-7 F – I, it is also possible to see that *gdf7* is not induced in all regions of roof plate epithelium that are adjacent to neuroepithelium (Figure 3-7, arrowhead). *gdf7* is only induced where the two tissues intermingle. This indicates a cell – cell contact-mediated mechanism of induction of *gdf7*, rather than a diffusion-based one. By contrast, non-overlapping *cath1* expression was induced in hindbrain neuroepithelium-derived cells adjacent to the domain of *gdf7* induction, as shown in Figure 3-4 K – M (arrowhead).

3.2.4 *gdf7* is not induced at the interface between roof plate epithelium and roof plate epithelium

In order to determine whether *gdf7* induction is specific to a particular tissue combination, roof plate epithelium derived from GFP- transgenic chick embryos was cultured adjacent to roof plate epithelium derived from wild-type chick embryos. Generally no *gdf7* is induced at the interface between the two tissues in such culture conditions (Figure 3-8 A, B, D – F; E5 n=2/3, E6 n=3/3). The approximate location of the interface in indicated with dotted lines on images in Figure 3-8. Due to high levels of auto-fluorescence it was difficult to discern the exact location of the interface between the two pieces of roof plate epithelium by whole-mount immunohistochemistry with anti-GFP antibodies. One co-culture derived from E5 brains showed a small region of *gdf7* expression at the indicated interface between the two pieces of roof plate epithelium. It is likely that this represents endogenous *gdf7* expression from contamination with roof plate-boundary tissue (Figure 3-8 C, arrow).
Figure 3-4 *gdf7* is induced in roof plate epithelium-derived cells and *cath1* is induced in hindbrain neuroepithelial cells

B – D show a confocal microscope slice of a flat-mounted E4 co-culture. *gdf7* is expressed in GFP – positive cells, which are RPE derived as indicated in A.

F – I show images of a cryostat section through an E6 co-culture. *gdf7* is expressed in GFP-positive cells (arrows), which are RPE derived as indicated in E. Arrowhead indicates a lack of *gdf7* induction in roof plate epithelium that is not intermingled with neuroepithelium.

K – M show images of a cryostat section through an E4 co-culture. *gdf7* is expressed in GFP-negative cells (arrows), which are roof plate epithelial-derived as indicated in J. *cath1* is expressed in GFP-positive cells (arrowhead), which are hindbrain neuroepithelial-derived as indicated in J.
Figure 3-5 *gdf7* expression in RPE – RPE co-cultures

Three co-cultures derived from E5 (A – C) or E6 (D – F) chick brains where RPE is cultured adjacent to RPE, showing the expression of *gdf7*. In each co-culture, one RPE was derived from a GFP-transgenic chick and the other RPE was derived from a wild-type chick. However, due to auto-fluorescence of the RPE it is very difficult to tell the difference between GFP-positive and GFP-negative RPE by whole-mount immunohistochemistry. Dotted lines indicate the interface between pieces of RPE in a co-culture. Arrow indicates *gdf7* expression at the interface between roof plate tissues, but is likely to represent contamination by roof plate boundary tissue rather than induced expression. RPE, roof plate epithelium.

Scale bar: 100μm
3.2.5 gdf7 is induced at the interface between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and spinal cord neuroepithelium

The juxtaposition of hindbrain roof plate epithelium and spinal cord neuroepithelium from E5 or E6 embryos shows that gdf7 expression can be induced at the interface between roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium of a different axial origin (Figure 3-9 B – D, arrows; E5 n=1/2, E6 n=2/2). In these co-cultures, roof plate epithelium was always GFP-positive and was detected as such, after in situ hybridisation, by whole-mount immunohistochemistry.

3.2.6 The roof plate is required to maintain the expression of cath1 in the adjacent rhombic lip

Roof plates (including the gdf7-domain) were dissected away from one side of flat-mounted hindbrains from E4, E5 and E6 embryos. Hindbrains were then assessed immediately for the expression of cath1 and gdf7 (0 hours incubation) or were cultured for 48hrs prior to fixation and assessment of cath1 and gdf7 expression. At 0 hours incubation, cath1 expression is present in the rhombic lip on both the side of the hindbrain from which the roof plate was removed, and the side where it was not removed in explants deriving from all ages (Figure 3-10 A – C, G – I, M – O). These explants show that the gdf7 domain and roof plate can be accurately removed from one side of the hindbrain, whilst leaving the rhombic lip cath1 expression domain mostly intact (Figure 3-10 compare B to C, H to I, N to O). After 48 hours of incubation, cath1 expression is lost in the rhombic lip on the side of the hindbrains from which the roof plate was removed, whilst being maintained on the side of the hindbrains where the roof plate was intact. (Figure 3-10 D – F, J – L, P – R, arrows, cath1 expression maintained adjacent to roof plate). In contrast to rhombic lip cath1 expression, the paramotor nucleus expression of cath1 is present on both sides of hindbrain explants cultured for 48 hours so this domain of cath1 expression is not dependent on acute signals from the roof plate for its maintenance (Figure 3-10 E, F, K, L, arrowheads).

In order to assess the time-course of the loss of cath1 expression, the roof plate was removed from E6 hindbrains and the hindbrain explants were cultured for varying lengths of time between 0 and 48 hours. No change in the level of cath1 expression in the rhombic lips of hindbrain explants was seen up to 8 hours after roof plate removal (Figure 3-11 A – E). By 16 hours, cath1 expression begins to be down-regulated in the rhombic lips, with staining becoming much less intense, and is almost completely absent by 32 hours of incubation (Figure 3-11 F, G). At 32 hours of incubation cath1 expression can be seen in the rhombic lips as small patches, but some of these patches of expression are associated with residual gdf7 expression, which is due to incomplete removal of the gdf7-domain (Figure 3-11 I,
Figure 3-6 *gdf7* is induced at the interface between hindbrain RPE and spinal cord neuroepithelium

Two co-cultures derived from E5 (A, B) or E6 (C, D) chick embryos where RPE is cultured adjacent to flat-mounted spinal cord neuroepithelium. Images show *gdf7* expression as detected by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation, and GFP expression as detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry, labelling the RPE component of co-cultures. Arrows indicate induced *gdf7* expression. RPE, roof plate epithelium.

Scale bar: 100µm
Figure 3-7 *cath1* expression is lost in hindbrain explants cultured for 48 hours when roof plate is removed

Roof plate (RPE and *gdf7* domain) is removed from one side of flat-mounted hindbrains from E4 (A – F), E5 (G – L) and E6 (M – R) chick embryos and either fixed immediately (0hrs; A – C, G – I, M – O) or cultured for 48 hours and then fixed (48 hrs; D – F, J – L, P – R). *cath1* (red) and *gdf7* (blue) are detected by whole-mount double *in situ* hybridisation. B, E, H, K, N, Q show the side of hindbrains where roof plate was removed. C, F, I, L, O, R show the side of hindbrains where the roof plate was not removed. Arrows indicate *cath1* expression maintained adjacent to intact roof plate; arrowheads, remaining paramotor nucleus *cath1* expression. Anterior is oriented upwards.

Scale bars: 200µm, A – F, H, I, L, O, R. 400µm, G, J, M, P
**Figure 3-8** *cath1* expression is lost in the rhombic lips between 32 and 48 hours of culture

*cath1* (red) and *gdf7* (blue) expression as detected by whole-mount in situ hybridisation in E6 chick hindbrain explants cultured for 0 hrs (A), 1 hrs (B), 2 hrs (C), 4 hrs (D), 8 hrs (E), 16 hrs (F), 32 hrs (G) or 48 hrs (H). I and J show high magnification views of the areas indicated in G. K shows a high magnification view of the area indicated in H. hrs, hours. Arrows indicate sites of residual *gdf7* expression; arrowheads indicate *cath1* expression present in the rhombic lips not adjacent to any residual *gdf7* expression. Anterior is oriented upwards.

Scale bars: 400µm, H. 200µm, J, K.
arrows). Other patches of *cath1* expression present in the rhombic lips at 32 hours are not associated with any adjacent *gdf7* expression (Figure 3-11 J, arrowheads). By 48 hours all *cath1* expression in the rhombic lips has been lost apart from a small domain of expression that is associated with a patch of *gdf7* expression (Figure 3-11 H, K, arrow). Therefore *cath1* expression is completely lost in the E6 rhombic lip between 32 and 48 hours of culture after the removal of the roof plate.

In order to confirm that signals from the roof plate epithelium or *gdf7*-domain can maintain *cath1* expression in the rhombic lips of cultured hindbrains, roof plate epithelium was cultured adjacent to the rhombic lip (*cath1*-domain) of flat-mounted hindbrains from which the roof plate (including the *gdf7*-domain) had been removed. These types of co-cultures will be referred to henceforth as roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium co-cultures. *gdf7* is induced at the interface between rhombic lip neuroepithelium and roof plate epithelium in E5 and E6-derived explants in the same manner as described for when roof plate epithelium is cultured adjacent to non-rhombic lip hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 3-12, 3-13 A – G, arrows). *cath1* was maintained in the rhombic lip adjacent to the transplanted roof plate epithelium in explants deriving from E5 brains in 10/11 explants where *gdf7* was induced (Figure 3-12, arrowheads, Table 2). *cath1* expression was always maintained adjacent to induced *gdf7* expression. In explants deriving from E6 brains *cath1* was maintained in the rhombic lip adjacent to induced *gdf7*, but in a lower proportion of explants than for explants derived from E5 embryos (Figure 3-13 E – G, arrowheads, Figure 3-14). Correspondingly, the percentage of explants showing only *gdf7* induction was higher in E6 explants in comparison with explants from E5 embryos. In two explants derived from E6 embryos, *cath1* was expressed adjacent to the transplanted roof plate in the absence of apparent *gdf7* expression (Figure 3-13 H, I, arrowheads). One possible explanation for this could be that signals from the roof plate epithelium outside the *gdf7*-domain are sufficient to maintain *cath1* expression in the E6 rhombic lip. However another explanation is that induced *gdf7* levels were too low to detect in these cases by whole-mount double *in situ* hybridisation. Therefore it seems likely that signals that maintain *cath1* expression in the rhombic lip derive from the *gdf7*-positive domain rather than from the rest of the roof plate epithelium.

Figure 3-15 shows that the proportion of explants showing *gdf7* expression that also show adjacent *cath1* expression is higher in roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium co-cultures than in roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium co-cultures of the corresponding age. Thus it is easier to maintain *cath1* expression in the rhombic lip than it is to induce it in non-rhombic lip tissue implying that there may be differences in competence of the hindbrain neuroepithelium to respond to roof plate-derived signals, along the
Figure 3-9 *cath1* is maintained adjacent to induced *gdf7* in E5 roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium co-cultures

Six examples of explants where roof plate epithelium was cultured against flat-mounted hindbrains from E5 chick embryos where the rhombic lips had not been removed. Explants were cultured for 48hrs then assessed for the expression of *gdf7* and *cath1*. In A – C *gdf7* is in blue and *cath1* is in red. In D – F *gdf7* is in red and *cath1* is in blue. *gdf7* is induced at the interface between roof plate epithelium and rhombic lip neuroepithelium (arrows). *cath1* was maintained in the rhombic lips of cultured hindbrains adjacent to induced *gdf7* expression (arrowheads).

Scale bar: 200µm
Figure 3-10 *cath1* is maintained adjacent to roof plate in E6 RPE– RlNe co-cultures

Examples of explants where roof plate epithelium was cultured adjacent to flat-mounted hindbrain neuroepithelium from E6 chick embryos where the rhombic lips had not been removed. Explants were cultured for 48 hours then assessed for the expression of *gdf7* and *cath1*. *gdf7* is in blue and *cath1* is in red in A, E, F, H. *gdf7* is in red and *cath1* is in blue in B – D, G, I. A – D show explants where only *gdf7* is induced at the interface between RPE and HbNE (arrows). E – G show explants where *cath1* is maintained adjacent to induced *gdf7* (arrowheads). Induced *gdf7* expression is indicated by arrows. H and I show explants where *cath1* is maintained adjacent to roof plate epithelium but no induced *gdf7* is visible (arrowheads). RPE, roof plate epithelium; RlNe, rhombic lip neuroepithelium.

Scale bar: 200µm.
Table 2 Frequency of gdf7 induction and cath1 maintenance in roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium co-cultures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>E5</th>
<th>E6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdf7 only</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cath1 maintained</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjacent to induced gdf7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cath1 maintained but not adjacent to gdf7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no induction</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3-14 Percentage of roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium co-cultures showing gdf7 induction and cath1 maintenance
Figure 3-15 Percentage of explants showing gdf7 expression that also show cath1 expression adjacent to gdf7 in E5 and E6 roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium (rpe – hbne) and roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium (rpe – rlne) co-cultures.
3.2.7 *cath1* can be induced in ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium via an interaction with roof plate epithelium in co-cultures derived from E4 and E5 brains, but not from E6 brains

The competence of ventral hindbrain tissue to express *cath1* in response to signals from an induced *gdf7*-positive organiser in co-culture was examined at E4-E6 by juxtaposing roof plate epithelium along the dorsoventral axis of flat-mounted hindbrains as illustrated in Figure 3-16 A. In explants derived from E4 brains, 2/14 explants showed induction of *gdf7* and *cath1* at the interface between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium (Table 3). *gdf7* was induced at the interface between the roof plate epithelium and the hindbrain neuroepithelium along most of the dorsoventral axis of the hindbrain, and even by an interaction between the roof plate epithelium and the floor plate (Figure 3-16 B, C, arrowheads, arrow marks interaction with floor plate). *cath1* was maintained adjacent to the induced *gdf7* in the rhombic lip (Figure 3-16 B open arrow), or was induced in the ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 3-16 C, open arrow). *cath1* was only ever seen in the hindbrain neuroepithelium adjacent to induced *gdf7* expression (Table 3).

In explants derived from E5 brains, *gdf7* was induced at the interface between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium in 8/18 explants (Figure 3-17 A – G, arrows, Table 3). As at E4, *gdf7* could be induced by an interaction between roof plate epithelium and the floor plate (Figure 3-17 D, open arrow). *cath1* was maintained adjacent to induced *gdf7* in the rhombic lip (Figure 3-17 B – D arrowheads, n=4/8), or was induced in the ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 3-17 E – G, arrowheads n=3/8). In 1/18 explants *cath1* expression was seen at the interface between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium, but was not adjacent to *gdf7* expression. As stated previously, this could have been due to undetectable levels of *gdf7* expression by double whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation (Figure 3-17 H, arrowhead, Table ).

In explants derived from E6 brains, *gdf7* was again induced at the interface between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 3-18, arrows, n= 8/19). As in E4 and E5 explants, *gdf7* was induced by an interaction between the roof plate epithelium and ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium, including the floor plate (Figure 3-18 C, open arrow). *cath1* was also maintained adjacent to *gdf7* in 1/8 explants, but was never induced in ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 3-18 E, arrowheads). This implies that there is a decrease
Figure 3-11 *gdf7* and *cath1* expression in RPE–HbNe co-cultures derived from E4 embryos where the RPE was cultured along the d-v axis of the hindbrain

(A) shows a diagram of the arrangement of RPE alongside the d-v axis of a flat-mounted hindbrain. The *gdf7*-domain is represented in red and the *cath1*-domain is represented in blue.

*gdf7* (red) is induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe in E4-derived co-cultures (B, C, arrowheads). *gdf7* can be induced by an interaction between RPE and HbNe, including the FP (B, arrow). *cath1* (blue) is maintained in the rhombic lip (B, open arrow) or induced in ventral HbNe (C, open arrow). RPE, roof plate epithelium; FP, floor plate; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium; D, dorsal; V, ventral.

Scale bar: 200µm
Figure 3-12 *gdf7* and *cath1* expression in RPE–HbNe co-cultures derived from E5 embryos where the RPE was cultured along the d-v axis of the hindbrain

*gdf7* (red) was induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe in E5-derived co-cultures where the RPE was cultured alongside the d-v axis of flat-mounted hindbrains (A – G, arrows). *cath1* was either maintained in the rhombic lip adjacent to induced *gdf7* (B – D, arrowheads) or induced in ventral HbNe adjacent to induced *gdf7* (E – G, arrowheads). In 1/18 explants *cath1* was induced in the ventral HbNe adjacent to the transplanted RPE but not adjacent to any visible *gdf7* expression (H, arrowhead). Dotted lines mark the ventral midline of flat-mounted hindbrains. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium; d-v, dorso-ventral.

Scale bar: 200µm
Figure 3-13 *gdf7* and *cath1* expression in RPE–HbNe co-cultures derived from E6 embryos where the RPE was cultured along the d-v axis of the hindbrain

*gdf7* (A, B, in blue; C – E in red, arrows) was induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe in co-cultures where RPE was cultured adjacent to the d-v axis of flat-mounted hindbrains. *gdf7* was even induced by an interaction between RPE and the floor plate (C, open arrow). *cath1* (blue) was only induced adjacent to induced *gdf7* in the rhombic lip in 1/8 explants (E, arrowheads). Dotted lines indicate the ventral midline of flat-mounted hindbrains. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.

Scale bar: 200µm
Table 3 Frequency of induction of *gdf7* and *cath1* in roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium co-cultures where roof plate epithelium was cultured along the dorsoventral axis of the hindbrain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>E4</th>
<th>E5</th>
<th>E6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>gdf7</em> only</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>gdf7</em> and <em>cath1</em> dorsal</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>gdf7</em> and <em>cath1</em> ventral</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cath1</em> not adjacent to <em>gdf7</em></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no induction</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
in competence between E5 and E6 of the ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium to respond to inductive signals from the roof plate.

3.2.8 *chairy2* but not *chairy1* is induced in the roof plate epithelium at a roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium interface.

Elevated levels of *chairy1* and *chairy2* expression were shown to mark the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary *in vivo* from E4 – E6 (Figure 2-6, 2-7). I therefore investigated whether elevated expression of *chairy1* and *chairy2* was induced in roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium co-cultures.

Elevated *chairy1* expression was induced at the interface between roof plate tissue and hindbrain neuroepithelium in co-cultures derived from E5 brains (Figure 3-19 A, B, arrows n= 2/6). A gradient of expression of *chairy1* in the hindbrain neuroepithelium adjacent to the transplanted roof plate was induced in other explants deriving from E5 embryos (Figure 3-19 C – F, arrowheads, n=2/6). This graded expression was only seen on the side of the hindbrain adjacent to the transplanted roof plate (Figure 3-19 D, F).

Examination of explants derived from E6 embryos also showed that *chairy1* was induced at the interface between the roof plate tissue and the hindbrain neuroepithelium (Figure 3-19 G, H, I, K, M, arrows n=7/8). In a proportion of these explants, *chairy1* expression was also seen to be induced in a graded manner adjacent to the transplanted roof plate (Figure 3-19 I – N, arrowheads, n=5/7). This gradient of expression was only present on the side of the hindbrain adjacent to the transplanted roof plate epithelium.

In order to determine whether the induced expression of *chairy1* at the interface between roof plate and neuroepithelium was present in roof plate epithelial cells, I took transverse cryostat sections of explants and stained for GFP expression by immunohistochemistry, since either the roof plate epithelium component or the hindbrain neuroepithelium component of the co-culture was derived from a GFP – transgenic chick embryo (Figure 3-20 A, B, E, F). This revealed that elevated *chairy1* expression was present in the hindbrain neuroepithelium and in the mesenchyme overlying the roof plate epithelium in co-cultures derived from both E5 and E6 embryos, but was absent from the roof plate epithelium itself (Figure 3-20 C, D, G, H, arrows). Due to the auto-fluorescent nature of the roof plate epithelium and overlying mesenchyme, it is difficult to discern the GFP-positive hindbrain neuroepithelium by immunohistochemistry. However, it was easy to discern the outline of the roof plate epithelium in these co-cultures by morphology (Figure 3-20 C, D).
In RPE-HbNe co-cultures derived from E5 (A – F) or E6 (G – N) chick embryos, elevated *chairy1* is induced at the interface between the transplanted roof plate and the HbNe (A, B, G – N, arrows). A gradient of *chairy1* expression was induced in the HbNe adjacent to the transplanted roof plate (C – F, I – N, arrowheads). D, F, J, L, N are lower magnification views of C, E, I, K, M respectively. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.

Scale bars: 200µm
Figure 3-15 *chairy1* is not induced in the RPE at an RPE – HbNe interface

RPE – HbNe co-cultures derived from E5 (A – D) and E6 (E – H) were cryostat sectioned and immunostained for GFP expression. C and D are images of sections at approximately the levels indicated in B. G and H are images of the sections at approximately the levels indicated in F. Elevated levels of expression of *chairy1* is seen in the HbNe and the mesenchyme overlying the RPE (arrows), but not within the RPE itself. Dotted lines demarcate the RPE. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium; Mes, mesenchyme.

*chairy2* expression is induced at the interface between the roof plate epithelium and the hindbrain neuroepithelium in roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium co-cultures derived from E5 and E6 brains (Figure 3-21 A – G, arrows, E5 n=4/4, E6 n=3/4). Transverse cryostat sections through these explants show that *chairy2* expression is induced in the roof plate epithelium, at the interface between the hindbrain neuroepithelium and roof plate epithelium (Figure 3-22 A – H, arrows). As stated above, in co-cultures where the hindbrain neuroepithelium is the GFP – positive component of the co-culture it is difficult to discern the GFP fluorescent immunostaining due to auto-fluorescence from the roof plate epithelium and the overlying mesenchyme. However, due to the distinctive morphology of the roof plate epithelium it was easy to discern its outline (Figure 3-22 G, H).
In RPE-HbNe co-cultures derived from E5 (A – D) or E6 (E – G) chick embryos, elevated `chairy2` was induced at the interface between RPE and HbNe (arrows). RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.

Scale bar: 200µm
Figure 3-17 *chairy2* is induced in the RPE at an RPE – HbNe interface

RPE – HbNe co-cultures derived from E5 (A – D) and E6 (E – H) were cryostat sectioned and immunostained for GFP expression. C and D are images of sections through the levels indicated in B. G and H are images of the sections through levels indicated in F. Elevated *chairy2* expression is induced in the RPE at an RPE – HbNe interface (arrows). Dotted lines demarcate the RPE. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium; Mes, mesenchyme.

3.3 Discussion

*gd7* marks the boundary between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium from E3 to at least E6 in chick (the latest stage examined) (Figure 2-1, 2-2, 2-3) and upregulated expression of *chairy2* marks this boundary from E4 – E6 (Figure 2-6, 2-7). In this chapter I show that the experimental recombination of roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium derived from E4 – E6 embryos induces *gd7* and *chairy2* in the roof plate epithelium at the interface between these two tissues, implying that signaling from the hindbrain neuroepithelium to the roof plate normally maintains *gd7* expression at this interface at these stages. Induced *gd7* marks an induced organiser as this domain can re-pattern the hindbrain neuroepithelium, inducing *cath1* expression in the ventral neuroepithelium, although the competence of the ventral neuroepithelium to respond to signals from the *gd7*-domain decreases with age. The *gd7*-domain is required, at least between E4 and E6, for the maintenance of *cath1* expression in the rhombic lip.

3.3.1 The pattern of *gd7* induction in tissue recombinations suggests an interaction between a neural ligand and a roof plate receptor.

Previous studies have shown that the expression of other boundary-localised signalling molecules and indeed the regeneration of boundaries themselves can be induced via tissue interactions between neighbouring tissue compartments (Guthrie and Lumsden, 1991; Irving and Mason, 1999; Guinazu et al., 2007). Here I find that the expression of *gd7* can be induced at an experimentally re-capitulated boundary between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium both *in vitro*, (Figure 3-3, 3-4, 3-5) and *in ovo* (Figure 3-1-2 A). The efficiency of induction of *gd7* via *in ovo* tissue grafting was lower than that achieved in the explants (rhombic lip into roof plate graft, 33%, n=9; E5 roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium explants 73%, n=15; E6 roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip neuroepithelium 57%, n=14). This inefficient induction might have been due to differences in the ages of the embryos that were being manipulated, the heterochronic nature of the grafting experiments, a lower efficiency of inter-mingling of donor and host tissues in grafted embryos in comparison with explants, or the difference in the length of time that grafted embryos or explants were incubated for (grafted embryos were incubated for 24 hours whereas explants were incubated for 48 hours). Nevertheless, both experimental paradigms show that it is possible to recapitulate *gd7* expression at an experimentally derived roof plate epithelium – rhombic lip interface.

*gd7* was induced in roof plate epithelium-derived tissue (Figure 3-7). Its induction was the result of a specific interaction between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium rather than a spontaneous upregulation of *gd7* at the cut edge of a piece of roof plate.
epithelium as gdf7 expression was not induced at a roof plate epithelium – roof plate epithelium interface (Figure 3-8, 3-1-2 B). gdf7 seemed to be induced only where the roof plate epithelium and the hindbrain neuroepithelium intermingled (Figure 3-7). Therefore it is likely that the signal that induces gdf7 in the roof plate epithelium is a cell-cell contact based signal and that the signal is directional – from neuroepithelium to roof plate, since gdf7 is always induced in roof plate epithelium. Ligands for the signalling pathway must therefore be present in the hindbrain neuroepithelial tissue, while the receptor must be present in the roof plate epithelium. gdf7 is induced by interactions between the roof plate epithelium and the entire dorsoventral axis of the hindbrain, including the floor plate (Figure 3-16, 3-17, 3-18), and spinal cord neuroepithelium (Figure 3-9 B, C, D), which suggests that the ligand or a family of ligands that activate the same signalling pathway are expressed broadly in both the hindbrain and spinal cord neuroepithelium.

As a corollary to this observation, it is possible that similar mechanisms of cell-cell interactions are responsible for the maintenance of gdf7 expression in the spinal cord. In support of this, a gdf7-negative domain is present at the midline of the spinal cord roof plate that could represent a tissue compartment equivalent to the expanded hindbrain roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-2 E, F). While it would be virtually impossible to physically ablate this domain once it is formed, the original formation of this domain could be blocked to test the requirement for cell-cell interactions between this medial compartment and the spinal cord neuroepithelium for the maintenance of the spinal cord roof plate. The medial compartment is likely to be established upon neural tube closure, therefore neurulation could be blocked in some manner to test the requirement for interactions between the two sides of the neural tube for roof plate formation and maintenance. To achieve this physical blockade of neurulation using tantalum foil in chick could be carried out. Alternatively the mouse mutants crash, loop-tail, which carry mutations in genes that function in the planar-cell-polarity pathway and display extensive failure of neural tube closure (Murdoch et al., 2001; Curtin et al., 2003; Doudney and Stanier, 2005), could be analysed to examine the consequence on roof plate development.

3.3.2 cath1 expression in the rhombic lip is maintained by roof plate signals likely to derive specifically from the gdf7-domain

Most previous studies of the role of the roof plate in patterning the dorsoventral axis of the neuroepithelium involved early genetic ablation of the roof plate and thereby focussed on the early establishment of progenitor domains within the neural tube (Lee et al., 2000a; Chizhikov et al., 2006). However, Krizhanovsky& Ben-Arie (2006) have shown that at E14.5 in mouse,, BMP-mediated signals from the choroid plexus are required to maintain
math1 expression in the rhombic lip. Here I find an acute requirement for the roof plate at E4, E5 and E6 in chick to maintain the expression of cath1 in the rhombic lip, and that cath1 expression is lost after 32 hours of in vitro culture of E6 hindbrains that have had their roof plates removed (Figure 3-10, 3-11). Although the removal of the hindbrain roof plate (the roof plate epithelium and the gdf7-domain combined) also removes part of the cath1 domain, the expression of cath1 in the rhombic lips can be rescued by the re-application of roof plate epithelium (Figure 3-12, 3-13). This argues for a specific requirement for the roof plate, rather than any part of the cath1 domain removed when the roof plate was dissected from hindbrains, for the maintenance of the remaining cath1 expression in the rhombic lips.

Existing cath1 expression in the rhombic lip after roof plate removal and 48 hours of culture, was always coincident with a small domain of residual gdf7 expression (Figure 3-11 H, K). Further, nearly all maintenance of cath1 after the re-application of the roof plate epithelium coincided with induced gdf7-expression at the roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium interface (Figure 3-12, 3-13). Therefore the requirement for the roof plate for the maintenance of cath1 expression is likely to depend specifically on signals derived from the gdf7-positive roof plate boundary.

3.3.3 The induced gdf7-domain represents an induced organiser

cath1 expression was not only maintained adjacent to induced gdf7-expression, but it could also be ectopically induced in non-rhombic lip hindbrain neuroepithelium, adjacent to induced gdf7 (Figure 3-3, 3-4 A – E, 3-5 A, B, 3-7 J – M). In such roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium co-cultures, cath1 expression was never seen in the hindbrain neuroepithelium adjacent to the transplanted roof plate without induced gdf7 expression. cath1 expression could be induced in the ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium adjacent to induced gdf7 expression in explants deriving from E4 and E5 embryos, but not from E6 embryos (Figure 3-16 C, 3-17 E – G, 3-18). In only 1/18 of E5 explants was cath1 expression seen in the ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium adjacent to the transplanted roof plate, without adjacent induced gdf7 expression (Figure 3-16 H). This may have been due to levels of induced gdf7 expression that are below the threshold for staining by whole-mount double in situ hybridisation. Therefore it is likely that signals from the roof plate that induce cath1 expression in the ventral hindbrain derive from the gdf7-positive domain and thus the induced gdf7-positive domain represents an induced organiser.

The competence of the rhombic lip to respond to signals from the gdf7-positive organiser is greater than the competence of the hindbrain neuroepithelium. This competence to respond decreases with age for both the rhombic lip and non-rhombic lip neuroepithelium (Figure 3-6, 3-15). Additionally, cath1 induction in the ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium was never
seen in E6-derived explants, whereas it did occur in E4 and E5-derived explants (Table 3). Thus the competence of the hindbrain to respond to signals from the gdf7-positive organiser becomes increasingly dorsally restricted over time. The mechanism of this dorsal restriction could involve Shh signals from the floor plate as these are required for early dorsoventral patterning of the neural tube (Yamada et al., 1991; Yamada et al., 1993; Marti et al., 1995a), however the mechanism of temporal restriction of competence is unknown.

Studies in chick and mice have previously focussed on the ability of the roof plate to ectopically induce Math1 expression and ventrally shift the development of dorsal neurons, via early manipulations of the neural tube (E8.75-9.5 in mouse, E2 (st10-11) in chick) (Chizhikov and Millen, 2004a; Chizhikov et al., 2006). Here I show that cath1 expression can be acutely induced in ventral hindbrain neuroepithelium until E5, showing that the dorsoventral axis of the hindbrain neuroepithelium is plastic and can be re-patterned even at this late stage. It would be interesting to determine the effect of this re-patterning on more ventral progenitor pool markers, such as ptf1a, ngn1, ngn2 and cash1 (Landsberg et al., 2005; Chizhikov et al., 2006; Liu et al., 2010), although detailed maps of these progenitor domains in the chick hindbrain would first have to be established.

chairy1 and chairy2 are chick orthologues of mouse hes1, which is expressed highly and persistently in boundary-localised organisers and is known to be required, along with other hes genes, to maintain boundary-localised organisers in development (Hirata et al., 2001; Baek et al., 2006). Both chairy1 and chairy2 mark the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary in E4 – E6 chick embryos (Figure 2-6, 2-7), but only chairy2 expression was induced in roof plate epithelial tissue at an experimentally derived roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium interface (Figure 3-20, 3-21, 3-22). Thus chairy2 may play a specific role in maintaining the gdf7-positive roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary during development. A specific role for cHairy2 rather than cHairy1 in the maintenance of the roof plate boundary may reflect its closer homology to mHes1 than cHairy1 to mHes1 (Jouve et al., 2000). The induction of chairy2 at the hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium interface further supports the concept that an organiser is induced at this interface, which is marked by gdf7 expression.

3.3.4 Conclusions
Tissue interactions between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium induce a gdf7-positive, chairy2-positive organiser in the roof plate epithelium at the interface between the two tissues. The specific induction of chairy2 may reflect a specific role for cHairy2 in maintaining the gdf7-positive organiser in vivo. A role of this gdf7-positive organiser is to maintain cath1 expression in the rhombic lip, but I have also demonstrated that the hindbrain
neuroepithelium can be re-patterned by this organiser at stages much later than dorsoventral patterning is thought to occur (Yamada et al., 1993; Briscoe et al., 2000; reviewed in Briscoe and Ericson, 2001). Together these findings shed new light on the mechanisms that maintain the $gdf7$-positive roof plate boundary-organiser.
Chapter 4 Notch signalling and the maintenance of the roof plate boundary-organiser

4.1 Background

Notch signalling is important in many developmental situations to specify or maintain boundary-organisers. It involves the trans-activation of Notch receptors by transmembrane ligands of the Delta/ Serrate/ Lag2 [DSL] family. This trans-activation results in the proteolytic cleavage of the Notch receptor and nuclear translocation of its intracellular domain (Notch ICD). The Notch ICD interacts with the DNA-binding protein CSL (named after CBF1, Su(H) and LAG-1) and activates transcription of Notch target genes such as the hes genes (reviewed in Bray, 2006). The classic example of its role at boundaries is the dorsoventral boundary of the wing imaginal disc where a stripe of Notch activation is necessary and sufficient for the induction or maintenance of the expression of the organiser protein Wg (Diaz-Benjumea and Cohen, 1995; Rulifson and Blair, 1995; Doherty et al., 1996). This stripe of Notch activation is achieved via the concurrent actions of the Notch ligands, Serrate, expressed in the dorsal compartment, and Delta, expressed in the ventral compartment (Diaz-Benjumea and Cohen, 1995; Doherty et al., 1996). The expression of Notch itself is not restricted to the compartment boundary (Fehon et al., 1991), but the restriction of Notch activation is achieved through the action of Fringe, which is expressed in the dorsal compartment and increases the effectiveness of Delta-Notch signalling whilst inhibiting Serrate-Notch signalling (Panin et al., 1997).

In striking similarity with this, Notch signalling is required for the maintenance of rhombomere boundaries in zebrafish and for the expression of Wnt1 (a zebrafish orthologue of Wg) (Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004). Similarly, Notch signalling and a boundary between radical fringe (a chick and mouse orthologue of Drosophila fringe) - expressing and non-expressing cells has been implicated in determining the formation of the apical ectodermal ridge, marked by fgf8 expression, at the dorsoventral border of the limb bud ectoderm (Laufer et al., 1997; Rodriguez-Esteban et al., 1997; Sidow et al., 1997). Boundaries between lunatic fringe (another orthologue of Drosophila fringe) – expressing and non-expressing cells are also important for the formation or maintenance of the zona limitans intrathalamica in chick, a developmental compartment that patterns the adjacent thalamus and pre-thalamus via the signalling molecule Shh (Zeltser et al., 2001; Kiecker and Lumsden, 2004). Recently, Notch activation mediated by serrate1 and modulated by lfng has been shown to be necessary and sufficient for the formation of the midbrain-hindbrain boundary and localisation of expression of its nascent signalling molecules, wnt1 and fgf8.
Together these studies indicate that Notch activation at a boundary within an epithelium, which is modulated by the action of Fringe or its orthologues, is an evolutionarily conserved mechanism that is deployed in multiple instances of boundary organiser formation and maintenance in development.

The restricted expression of \textit{gdf7} at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary and the upregulated expression of the Notch downstream target genes (\textit{chairy1} and \textit{chairy2}) at this boundary (Chapter 2) indicated that Notch signalling might play a role in the maintenance of this boundary. The pattern of induction of \textit{gdf7} in the roof plate epithelium in \textit{in vitro} co-culture experiments where roof plate epithelium was cultured adjacent to hindbrain neuroepithelium indicated that a cell-cell contact based signal is involved in the induction of \textit{gdf7} (Chapter 3). This supports a role for Notch signalling in maintaining \textit{gdf7} expression at a hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium interface. Furthermore, since \textit{gdf7} expression is only induced in the roof plate, the receptor of the inducing signal must be present in this epithelium. \textit{In situ} hybridisation analysis showed that \textit{notch2} is a good candidate to mediate this signal as it is expressed in the roof plate epithelium of E5 chick embryos (Figure 2-8). Further, \textit{delta1} was a good candidate as being the ligand present in the hindbrain neuroepithelium as it was expressed in the ventricular zone throughout most of the hindbrain neuroepithelium, along the dorsoventral axis, and showed a sharp boundary of expression adjacent to the \textit{gdf7}-domain (Figure 2-8). Therefore, in this chapter, I investigated the role of Notch signalling in maintaining the \textit{gdf7}-positive roof plate boundary (specifically, the role of \textit{delta1}) by overexpressing \textit{delta1} in the roof plate epithelium to see if it was sufficient to induce an ectopic roof plate boundary, as assessed by \textit{gdf7} expression.

\textit{hairy/enhancer of split (hes)} genes are repressor-type basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH) transcription factors that are well-known downstream effectors of Notch signalling (reviewed in Kageyama et al., 2007). They function in the maintenance of neural stem cells, preventing ectopic neurogenesis, but have also been shown to be essential for the maintenance of boundary-localised organisers, preventing ectopic neurogenesis within these organisers (Ohtsuka et al., 1999; Hirata et al., 2001; Geling et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004; Hatakeyama et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005; Baek et al., 2006). Although Hes transcription factors are well known to be targets of Notch signalling, whether they function downstream of Notch to maintain boundary-localised organisers is debateable. The zebrafish \textit{hes}-related gene \textit{her5} has been shown to be involved in a Notch-independent fashion in the maintenance of the midbrain-hindbrain boundary (Geling et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004). Furthermore it has been shown that \textit{hes1} can be regulated through Notch-independent pathways, such as through the \textit{shh} pathway (Yoon and Gaiano, 2005; Wall et al., 2009; Sanalkumar et al., 2010). Thus it was proposed that \textit{hes1} expression at boundaries of the
developing mouse CNS might also be Notch-independent (Kageyama et al., 2007). Experiments carried out in this chapter indicate that the hes1 orthologue, chairy2, functions downstream of Notch signalling at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary as its expression is induced downstream of Notch activation in the roof plate epithelium.

Both chick orthologues of mouse hes1, chairy1 and chairy2 were seen to be upregulated at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary in vivo in E4 – E6 chick embryos (Chapter 2). However, only chairy2 expression was induced in the roof plate epithelium at an experimental roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium interface in co-culture experiments (Chapter 3). Therefore, in this chapter, the specific role of cHairy2 in the maintenance of the roof plate boundary organiser was investigated. The function of cHairy2 was disrupted in two ways: through construction of electroporation constructs encoding a putative dominant negative and an overexpression construct. Dominant negative cHairy2 was created by deleting the c-terminal WRPW domain that is required for the recruitment of Groucho/TLE co-repressors (Paroush et al., 1994; Fisher et al., 1996; Grbavec et al., 1998). Hes genes homodimerise and bind to DNA and recruit Groucho/TLE co-repressors to actively repress the expression of target genes (reviewed in Kageyama et al., 2007). Therefore a cHairy2ΔWRPW protein should act in a dominant negative manner by sequestering functional cHariy2 proteins and preventing the recruitment of Groucho/TLE co-repressors to DNA. In support of this, the deletion of the WRPW domain from E(Spl) proteins in Drosophila renders them dominant negative (Giebel and Campos-Ortega, 1997).

Given the localisation of organiser properties at the roof plate boundaries (Chapter 3) and the fact that the hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium differentiates in a specific pattern within the roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-9, 2-11), it was hypothesised that signals from the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary might be involved in the patterning or specification of choroid plexus epithelium differentiation. Investigation of the role of cHairy2 in the maintenance of the gdf7-positive roof plate boundary led to the development of the chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 and chairy2-IRESeGFPm5 expression constructs and an electroporation technique to target the upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary that could be used to investigate the effects of disruption of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary on roof plate epithelial (cyp26C1) and choroid plexus epithelial (ttr) markers. In addition, the ectopic expression of delta1 in the roof plate epithelium essentially expanded the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, and could therefore be used to assess whether this had any effect on the patterning of choroid plexus differentiation. These experiments demonstrated that signals from the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary are required for
the formation or maintenance of roof plate epithelium and choroid plexus epithelium identity, and that an expanded roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary affects the pattern of choroid plexus epithelium differentiation.

4.2 Results

4.2.1 Co-electroporation of 1:1 RCAS-delta1: CAβ-GFP constructs

Details of the electroporation constructs used in the experiments described in this chapter and explanations of the abbreviations used can be found in Appendix C. The RCAS-delta1 expression construct did not encode GFP either as a fusion protein with Delta1 or as IRES-GFP. Therefore in order to test whether a technique of co-electroporation with a CAβ-GFP construct could be used to trace effective electroporations, I tested whether RFP and GFP are co-expressed when the RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP are co-electroporated into the lower roof plate epithelium and adjacent rhombic lip of E3 chick embryos and embryos are incubated for 48 hours prior to collection. The co-electroporation of embryos with RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP at a 1:1 concentration ratio gave almost complete co-expression of RFP and GFP, with 97.3 ± 2.0% of electroporated cells co-expressing RFP and GFP, as determined by confocal microscopy to detect the fluorescent RFP and GFP proteins (Figure 4-1 A, B). 1.6 ± 1.6% cells showed only GFP expression and 1.1 ± 0.4% cells showed only RFP expression so it was deemed that this concentration ratio for co-electroporation would give efficient co-expression of an RCAS expression construct and the CAβ-GFP expression construct at the protein level.

When the RCAS-delta1 and the CAβ-GFP DNA constructs are co-electroporated into the lower roof plate epithelium and rhombic lip of E3 chick embryos at a concentration ratio of 1:1, delta1 is effectively ectopically expressed in the roof plate epithelium after 48hrs (Figure 4-2 A – C, black arrows, n=3/5). However, unlike the coincident expression of RFP and GFP as detected by confocal microscopy when RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP constructs were co-electroporated at a 1:1 concentration ratio, delta1 expression was not completely coincident with GFP expression. delta1 expression, as detected by single whole-mount in situ hybridisation, was mostly confined within the electroporation site, however some delta1-positive, GFP-negative cells were present outside the electroporation site (Figure 4-2 A, white arrows). Further, some GFP-positive cells appear to be delta1-negative (Figure 4-2 A – C, white arrowheads). Therefore co-electroporation of the RCAS-delta1 and CAβ-GFP constructs at a 1:1 concentration ratio appears not to give as effective a level of co-expression as observed for the co-electroporation of RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP expression constructs.
Figure 4-1 Co-expression of GFP and RFP when RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP are co-electroporated at a 1:1 concentration ratio

RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP were electroporated at a 1:1 concentration ratio into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent roof plate epithelium of an E3 chick embryo. Embryos were incubated for 48hrs prior to collection. A and B show a confocal optical section of flat-mounted roof plates. 97.3 ± 2.0% cells showed co-expression of RFP and GFP. 1.6 ± 1.6% cells showed only GFP expression and 1.1 ± 0.4% cells showed only RFP expression. Arrow indicates a cell co-expressing RFP and GFP but with a higher level of RFP expression so it appears more red. Scale bar: 100µm.
Figure 4-2 Overexpression of delta1 in the RPE by co-electroporation of RCAS-Delta1 with CAβ-GFP

A DNA mix of 1:1 RCAS-Delta1: CAβ-GFP (A, B, C) or 1:1 RCAS-RFP: CAβ-GFP (D) was electroporated into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent RPE of an E3 chick embryo. Embryos were incubated for 48hrs prior to collection. delta1 expression was detected by whole-mount in situ hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. delta1 expression is not present in all GFP-labelled electroporated cells (white arrowheads) but ectopic delta1 expression is generally contained in the electroporated domain (black arrows). However, some delta1-positive cells are not present within the electroporated domain (white arrows). Anterior is oriented upwards. RPE, roof plate epithelium.

Scale bar: 50µm.
An explanation for this could be that the whole-mount in situ hybridisation process does not detect low-level delta1 mRNA expression, whereas low-level RFP and GFP expression could be detected by confocal microscopy, creating the impression that cells are GFP-positive but delta1-negative. In support of this, although 97.3 ± 2.0% of cells co-expressed RFP and GFP, the ratio of expression of RFP and GFP varied from cell to cell so some cells appeared more red or green than others (Figure 4-1 B, arrow). Another explanation is that the blue precipitate that forms from the whole-mount in situ hybridisation process quenches the fluorescence of the fluorophore-conjugated secondary antibody used in the immunohistochemical detection of the GFP protein, giving the impression that cells are delta1-positive but GFP-negative. Despite some cells apparently not co-expressing delta1 and GFP, most delta1 expression was confined to the GFP-positive electroporation domain so this co-electroporation technique was subsequently used to study the effect of overexpression of delta1 in the roof plate epithelium.

Co-electroporation of the lower roof plate epithelium and adjacent rhombic lip with the RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP DNA constructs mixed at a 1:1 concentration ratio had no effect on delta1 expression in either the rhombic lip or the roof plate epithelium (Figure 4-2 D, n=0/2).

4.2.2 Ectopic expression of delta1 in the roof plate epithelium induces gdf7 expression

Co-electroporation of RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP constructs mixed at a 1:1 concentration ratio into the lower rhombic lip and roof plate epithelium of E3 embryos that were then incubated for 48hrs prior to collection, had no effect on gdf7 expression (Figure 4-3 A, n=0/3). In contrast, co-electroporation of RCAS-delta1 and CAβ-GFP into the roof plate epithelium of E3 chick embryos induced ectopic expression of gdf7 in the roof plate epithelium after 48hrs incubation (Figure 4-3 B – I, arrows, n=4/4). delta1 was also overexpressed in the rhombic lip by this method but gdf7 was not induced there (Figure 4-3 F, H, arrowheads). This shows that induction of gdf7 by delta1 overexpression was specific to the roof plate epithelium.

The induction of gdf7 expression seemed to be cell non-autonomous as gdf7-expressing cells were generally GFP-negative and adjacent to GFP-positive cells (Figure 4-3 C, E, G, I, arrows). However, this could have been due to quenching of the fluorescent signal detecting GFP expression by the blue whole-mount in situ precipitate as mentioned above. Additionally, induction of gdf7 by delta1 may be cell-autonomous as some delta1-positive cells are found outside the GFP-positive electroporation domain (Figure 4-2 A, white arrows), although for the most part delta1-expressing cells are found within the GFP-positive...
Figure 4-3 Overexpression of \textit{delta1} in the RPE induces \textit{gdf7} expression

A DNA mix of 1:1 RCAS-RFP: CA\textbeta-GFP (A) or 1:1 RCAS-\textit{Delta1}: CA\textbeta-GFP (B - I) was electroporated into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent RPE of an E3 chick embryo. Embryos were incubated for 48hrs prior to collection. \textit{gdf7} expression was detected by whole-mount \textit{in situ} hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. C, E, G and I show magnifications of electroporated regions shown in B, D, F and H. Anterior is oriented upwards. \textit{gdf7} expression is ectopically induced in the roof plate epithelium (arrows), but not in the rhombic lip (arrowhead). C, E, G, I arrows indicate that \textit{gdf7} expression is located adjacent to GFP-positive cells. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.

Scale bars: 50\textmu m.
domain. Therefore due to the potential for quenching of GFP detection and the fact that co-electroporation of roof plate epithelium with RCAS-delta1 and CAβ-GFP at a 1:1 ratio does not give complete co-expression of the two constructs, further work was required to determine whether gdf7 induction by delta1 in the roof plate epithelium was cell autonomous or non-autonomous.

To further investigate this the RCAS-delta1 and CAβ-GFP constructs were electroporated at a 1:1 ratio into the lower roof plate epithelium and rhombic lip and double in situ hybridisation to detect gdf7 and delta1 expression was carried out. Co-electroporation of RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP at a 1:1 ratio had no effect on either delta1 or gdf7 expression (Figure 4-4 A, B, n=0/3). When RCAS-delta1 and CAβ-GFP were co-electroporated into the roof plate epithelium it could be seen that only a subset of GFP-positive cells co-expressed delta1 (Figure 4-4 D, F, H, white arrows). 2 of 3 embryos that showed delta1 overexpression in the roof plate epithelium also showed gdf7 induction in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 4-4 E, G, arrows). This induction appeared to be non-autonomous in relation to delta1 expressing cells, however the red precipitate detecting delta1 expression may obscure gdf7 expression (detected by blue precipitate), and so mask cell autonomous induction of gdf7.

These results show that delta1 expression in the roof plate epithelium induces gdf7 expression there, but whether gdf7 induction is cell autonomous, non-autonomous or both requires further analysis. This could be achieved if delta1 was cloned into an expression construct containing IRES-GFP, or if fluorescent in situ hybridisation to detect gdf7 expression was used in combination with immunohistochemistry to detect Delta1 expression.

4.2.3 Ectopic delta1 expression in the roof plate epithelium induces chairy2 expression

Co-electroporation of RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP at a 1:1 concentration ratio in the rhombic lip and roof plate epithelium had no effect on chairy2 expression (Figure 4-5 C, D, n=0/11). In contrast, co-electroporation of RCAS-delta1 and CAβ-GFP did induce chairy2 expression in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 4-5 A, B, arrows, n=6/13).

4.2.4 Ectopic delta1 expression in the roof plate epithelium causes upregulation of cyp26C1 expression within the electroporation domain

In order to study the effect of an expanded gdf7 domain within the roof plate epithelium on roof plate epithelial-expressed genes, I examined the expression of the roof plate epithelium-expressed cyp26C1 in embryos where RCAS-delta1 and CAβ-GFP constructs were co-electroporated into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent roof plate epithelium. Co-electroporation of RCAS-RFP and CAβ-GFP into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent roof
Figure 4-4 Overexpression of *delta1* in the RPE and detection of *delta1* and *gdf7* expression

A DNA mix of 1:1 RCAS-RFP: CAβ-GFP (A, B) or 1:1 RCAS-Delta1: CAβ-GFP (C - H) was electroporated into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent RPE of an E3 chick embryo. Embryos were incubated for 48hrs prior to collection. *delta1* (red) and *gdf7* (blue) expression was detected by whole-mount double *in situ* hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. A, C, E, G show bright-field images taken using a compound microscope. B, D, F, H show confocal micrographs of the regions shown in A, C, E, G respectively. Anterior is oriented to the left. Black arrows, *gdf7* induced in the roof plate epithelium. White arrows, the subset of GFP-positive cells that co-express *delta1*. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.

Scale bars: 100µm.
**Figure 4-5 Overexpression of delta1 in the RPE induces chairy2 expression**

A DNA mix of 1:1 RCAS-Delta1: CAβ-GFP (A, B) or 1:1 RCAS-RFP: CAβ-GFP (C, D) was electroporated into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent RPE of E3 chick embryos. Embryos were incubated for 48hrs prior to collection. chairy2 expression was detected by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. Anterior is oriented upwards. Arrows indicate induced chairy2 expression in the RPE after electroporation with 1:1 RCAS-Delta1: CAβ-GFP. No chairy2 was induced in the RPE after electroporation with 1:1 RCAS-RFP: CAβ-GFP. RPE, roof plate epithelium; HbNe, hindbrain neuroepithelium.

Scale bars: 100µm.
plate epithelium had no effect on \textit{gdf7} or \textit{cyp26C1} expression, when compared with expression on the un-electroporated side (Figure 4-6 A – C, arrows indicate electroporated region, \(n=0/3\)). However, co-electroporation of RCAS-\textit{delta1} and CA\(\beta\)-GFP constructs caused an upregulation of \textit{cyp26C1} expression within the electroporated domain (Figure 4-6 D, E, G, H arrows, \(n=2/5\)). No induction of \textit{gdf7} expression in the roof plate epithelium was observed in these electroporated embryos, however this could have been due to detection of \textit{cyp26C1} expression obscuring detection of \textit{gdf7} expression (Figure 4-6 F, open arrow). On one occasion, \textit{cyp26C1} expression was downregulated non-autonomously, adjacent to the region of upregulated \textit{cyp26C1} expression (Figure 4-6 D, E arrowheads). However whether this downregulation was due to non-autonomous signals from the electroporated domain, or whether it reflects sorting of electroporated from non-electroporated cells is not clear.

\textbf{4.2.5 Ectopic expression of \textit{delta1} in the roof plate epithelium induces \textit{gdf7} expression but causes a downregulation of \textit{ttr} expression}

Co-electroporation of RCAS-\textit{RFP} and CA\(\beta\)-GFP into the right hand-side lower rhombic lip and adjacent roof plate epithelium had no effect on \textit{gdf7} or \textit{ttr} expression, as compared with the un-electroporated side (Figure 4-7 A – C, arrows indicate electroporated region, \(n=0/3\)). Co-electroporation of RCAS-\textit{delta1} and CA\(\beta\)-GFP constructs induced \textit{gdf7} expression in the roof plate epithelium, in agreement with findings stated above (Figure 4-7 D – F, arrows, \(n=1/5\)). This showed that induction of \textit{gdf7} was non-autonomous to the electroporated domain, although due to the nature of the co-electroporation described above, it cannot be ruled out that some GFP-negative cells are \textit{delta1}-positive. Expression of \textit{delta1} in the roof plate epithelium caused downregulation of \textit{ttr} expression autonomously, within the electroporated domain (Figure 4-7 E, G, H, J, K arrowheads \(n=3/5\)).

\textbf{4.2.6 Expression of truncated cHairy2 at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary results in a loss of \textit{gdf7} and \textit{cath1} expression}

\textit{hairy/ enhancer of split (hes)} genes are known downstream effectors of Notch signalling and are well known in their own right to be required for the maintenance of boundary-localised organisers (Geling et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005; Baek et al., 2006; reviewed in Kageyama et al., 2008). \textit{chairy1} and \textit{chairy2} are two chick orthologues of mouse \textit{hes1} (Jouve et al., 2000). Both are upregulated within the \textit{gdf7}-domain in chick at E4 (Figure 2-7, 2-8), but only \textit{chairy2}, like \textit{gdf7}, is induced in the roof plate epithelium at an experimental interface between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium (Figure 3-22). Consequently the requirement for \textit{cHairy2} function for the maintenance of the \textit{gdf7}-domain and adjacent \textit{cath1} expression was investigated. To achieve this the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary was electroporated with a construct
Figure 4-6 Expression of *delta1* in the RPE upregulates *cyp26C1* expression

A DNA mix of 1:1 RCAS-*RFP*: CAβ-GFP (A – C) or 1:1 RCAS-*Delta1*: CAβ-GFP (D - I) was electroporated into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent RPE of an E3 chick embryo. Embryos were incubated for 48hrs prior to collection. *gdf7* (red) and *cyp26C1* (blue) expression was detected by whole-mount double *in situ* hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. B, C, E, F, H, I show high magnification views of electroporated regions in A, D, G. C, F, I show confocal micrographs of the region shown in B, E and H respectively. Anterior is oriented upwards and hindbrains are mounted with the ventricular surface upwards. A, B, arrows indicate electroporated region. D, E, G, H, arrows indicate upregulated *cyp26C1* expression after ectopic *delta1* expression in the RPE. E, arrowhead, non-autonomous downregulation of *cyp26C1* expression. F, open arrow, detection of *gdf7* expression is obscured by detection of *cyp26C1* expression.

Scale bar: 100µm
Figure 4-7 Expression of *delta1* in the RPE induces *gdf7* but causes downregulation of *ttr*

A DNA mix of 1:1 RCAS-RFP: CAβ-GFP (A – C) or 1:1 RCAS-Delta1: CAβ-GFP (D - L) was electroporated into the lower rhombic lip and adjacent RPE of an E3 chick embryo. Embryos were incubated for 48hrs prior to collection. *gdf7* (red) and *ttr* (blue) expression was detected by whole-mount double *in situ* hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. B, C, E, G, H, J, K, L show high magnification views of electroporated regions in A, D, G, J, C, F, I, L show confocal micrographs of the region shown in B, E, H and K respectively. Anterior is oriented to the upwards and hindbrains are mounted with the ventricular surface upwards. A, arrow, electroporated region. D – F, arrows, *gdf7* expression induced in the RPE. E, G, H, J, K, downregulation of *ttr* expression within the electroporated domain.

Scale bar: 100µm.
encoding a truncated version of cHairy2 (chairy2\text{\textbar}\text{\textbar}WRPW\text{-}\text{IRESeGFPm5}, gift from J. Gilthorpe, Umeå University), where the conserved c-terminal WRPW domain that is required for the recruitment of Groucho/TLE co-repressors was deleted (Paroush et al., 1994; Fisher et al., 1996; Grbavec et al., 1998). This truncated version of cHairy2 has been proposed to act in a dominant negative fashion, similar to the effect of such a truncation on the E(Spl) proteins of Drosophila (Giebel and Campos-Ortega, 1997).

Electroporation of this construct at the upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary of E4 embryos resulted in a downregulation of \textit{gdf7} and adjacent \textit{cath1} expression in an autonomous manner, after 24 hours incubation (Figure 4-8 A – I, arrows, n=4/25), as compared with the control (un-electroporated) side of the brains. As a control experiment a GFP expression construct (CA\text{\textbeta}-\text{GFP}) was electroporated at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary of E4 embryos, and the hindbrains were assessed for \textit{gdf7} and \textit{cath1} expression after 24 hours incubation. For the most part, \textit{gdf7} and \textit{cath1} expression were unaffected by electroporation with the GFP expression construct (Figure 4-9 A – D, n=9/11), however on one occasion electroporation resulted in a slight downregulation of \textit{gdf7} and adjacent \textit{cath1} expression (Figure 4-9 E, F arrow, n=1/11), and on another occasion electroporation resulted in a slight downregulation of \textit{cath1} expression within the electroporated domain in comparison with the un-electroporated side of brains (Figure 4-9 G, H arrow, n=1/11). These effects were milder than those achieved by electroporation with the \textit{chairy2\textbar}WRPW expression construct leading to the conclusion that expression of \textit{chairy2\textbar}WRPW causes a loss of \textit{gdf7} and \textit{cath1} expression above and beyond a baseline effect that is the result of electroporation of any construct at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary.

4.2.7 Electroporation with the \textit{chairy2\textbar}WRPW expression construct causes cell death within the electroporated domain

In order to investigate the mechanism behind the loss of \textit{gdf7} and \textit{cath1} expression after electroporation at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with the \textit{chairy2\textbar}WRPW or the GFP expression construct, a stain to detect cell death was carried out. LysoTracker Red staining to detect cell death shows that electroporation of the rhombic lip with either the CA\text{\textbeta}-\text{GFP} or the \textit{chairy2\textbar}WRPW\text{-}\text{IRESeGFPm5} construct results in a significant increase in cell death in the electroporated domain compared with a similar region of the rhombic lip on the control (un-electroporated) side of the hindbrain (Figure 4-10 A – E, arrows, n=3, \(p<0.05\), Wilcoxon paired comparison test). However, after subtraction of the number of dead cells on the control side from the number of dead cells within the electroporated domain on the electroporated side of the hindbrain, the domain electroporated
Figure 4-8 Electroporation of the gdf7-domain and rhombic lip with a cHairy2∆WRPW expression construct causes downregulation of gdf7 and adjacent cath1 expression

E4 embryos were electroporated with a cHairy2∆WRPW expression construct into the right-hand side upper rhombic lip and gdf7 domain. Embryos were incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. The expression of gdf7 (blue) and cath1 (red) was assessed by whole-mount in situ hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. Hindbrains were flat-mounted as illustrated in A for imaging. B, D, F, H show the electroporated side and C, E, G, I show the un-electroporated (control) side of flat-mounted hindbrains. Arrows indicate autonomous downregulation of gdf7 and cath1 expression within the electroporated domain. RPE, roof plate epithelium; FP, floor plate.

Scale bar: 100µm
E4 embryos were electroporated with a GFP expression construct into the right-hand side upper rhombic lip and gdf7 domain. Embryos were incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. The expression of gdf7 (blue) and cath1 (red) was assessed by whole-mount in situ hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. A, C, E, G show the electroporated side and B, D, F, H show the un-electroporated (control) side of flat-mounted hindbrains. E, arrow, slight downregulation of expression of gdf7 and cath1. G, arrow, slight downregulation of cath1 expression.

Scale bar: 100µm
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control side</th>
<th>Electroporated side</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lysotracker</td>
<td>Lysotracker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA3-GFP</td>
<td>GFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chain2 ΔWRPW</td>
<td>Lysotracker GFP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Image of CA3-GFP and chain2 ΔWRPW expression](image)

**E**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>control side</th>
<th>EP side</th>
<th>control side</th>
<th>EP side</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GFP</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cHairy2 ΔWRPW</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>control side</th>
<th>EP side</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GFP</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cHairy2 ΔWRPW</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 4-10 Cell death after electroporation with a GFP or a cHairy2ΔWRPW expression construct

E4 embryos were electroporated with a GFP (CAβ-GFP) (A, B) or a cHairy2ΔWRPW (cHairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESεGFPm5) (C, D) expression construct into the right-hand side upper rhombic lip and gdf7 domain. Embryos were incubated for 24 hours then collected and stained for cell death using LysoTracker Red then fixed in PFA. A – D show confocal micrographs of the upper rhombic lip of flat-mounted hindbrains, with A and C showing the control (un-electroporated) side, and B and D showing the electroporated side of the hindbrain. Anterior is oriented to the left. Arrows indicate cell death within the electroporated domain. Scale bar: 100µm

E, graph showing numbers of dead cells/ mm². * indicates p<0.05, n=3, determined using the Wilcoxon paired comparison test. Bars indicate the standard error of the mean.

F, graph showing the mean difference between the electroporated (EP) side and control side of the number of dead cells/ mm². * indicates p<0.05, n=3, determined using the Mann-Whitney test.
with the *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5* construct shows a significantly higher level of cell death than the domain electroporated with CAβ-GFP (Figure 4-10 F, n=3, p<0.05, Mann-Whitney test). Therefore the downregulation of *gdf7* or *cath1* expression after electroporation with CAβ-GFP or *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5* can be attributed, at least in part, to cell death. Further, however, electroporation with the *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5* construct causes significantly more cell death than electroporation with the CAβ-GFP construct, and this is reflected in the higher severity of effects on *gdf7* and *cath1* expression observed after electroporation with the *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5* construct.

### 4.2.8 Cloning and electroporation of a new *chairy2ΔWRPW* and a full length *chairy2* expression construct

Sequencing of the *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5* construct revealed an ATG translation start codon upstream and out of frame of the correct translation start site for the cHairy2 coding sequence (Figure 4-11). This may have resulted in inefficient translation of the protein, which could explain the low penetrance of the observed downregulation of *gdf7* and *cath1* expression upon electroporation of the construct (Figure 4-8, n=4/25). To investigate whether a more penetrant effect could be achieved, the cHairy2ΔWRPW coding sequence was re-cloned from E3 chick cDNA into the pCAβ-IRESeGFPm5 vector (Andreae et al., 2009) as described in the Methods. This new construct will be termed *chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5*. A full length coding sequence for cHairy2 was also cloned into the pCAβ-IRESeGFPm5 vector as described in the Methods. This construct will be termed *chairy2-IRESeGFPm5*.

As noted previously, for the most part, electroporation of CAβ-GFP into the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary had no effect on *gdf7* and *cath1* expression, in comparison with the control (un-electroporated) side of the brain (Figure 4-12 A, B, n=7/8). However, on one occasion *cath1* expression was downregulated in the electroporated domain in comparison with the same region on the control side of the brain (Figure 4-12 C, D, arrows, electroporated region; arrowhead, similar region on the un-electroporated side n=1/8). Electroporation of the *chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5* construct caused downregulation of both *gdf7* and *cath1* expression in the electroporated domain, in comparison with the same region on the control side of the brain, although at a similar level of penetrance as achieved with the original *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5* construct (Figure 4-12 E – H, arrows, electroporated region; arrowheads, similar region on the un-electroporated side n=2/9). This indicates that the presence of the additional ATG translation start site upstream of the correct translation start site in the *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-
3  GGC CGC CCA TGG AAT AAC ACC ACC ATG CCT GCC GAC CTG ATG GAG  47
   Met Pro Ala Asp Leu Met Glu  6

48  AAG AGC AGC GCC TCG CCG GTG GCC GCC ACC CCC G CC AGC ATC AAC  92
   Lys Ser Ser Ala Ser Pro Val Ala Ala Thr Pro Ala Ser Ile Asn  21

93  GCG ACG CCC GAT AAG CCC AAA ACG GCG GCG GAG C AC CGG AAG TCC 137
   Ala Thr Pro Asp Lys Pro Lys Thr Ala Ala Glu His Arg Lys Ser  36

138  TCC AAA CCC ATC ATG GAG AAG CGG CGG CGG GCG C GC ATC AAC GAG 182
   Ser Lys Pro Ile Met Glu Lys Arg Arg Arg Ala Arg Ile Asn Glu  51

183  AGC CTG GGG CAG CTG AAG ACG CTG ATC CTG GAC G CG CTG AAG AAG 227
   Ser Leu Gly Gln Leu Lys Thr Leu Ile Leu Asp Ala Leu Lys Lys  66

228  GAT AGT TCG CGG CAC TCC AAG CTG GAG AAG GCC G AC ATC CTG GAG 272
   Asp Ser Ser Arg His Ser Leu Lys Thr Leu Ile Leu Asp Ala Leu Lys Lys  81

273  ATG ACC GTC AAG CAC CTG CGG AGC CTG AAG GCC GAC CTG GAG 317
   Met Thr Val Lys His Leu Arg Ser Leu Gln Arg Ala Gln Met Thr  96

318  GCT GCG CTG AGC ACA GAC CCT ACG CTG CTG GCC AAG TAC CGC GCC 362
   Ala Ala Leu Ser Thr Asp Pro Thr Val Leu Gly Tyr Arg Ala  111

363  GGC TTC AGC GAG TGC ATG AAC GAA GTG ACG CGG T TC TCT CTC TCC ACC 407
   Gly Phe Ser Glu Cys Met Asn Glu Val Thr Arg Phe Leu Ser Thr  126
408  TGC GAA GGC GTC AAC GCT GAG GTG GTG CGC ACC CTC CTG GCC CAC  
127  Cys Glu Gly Val Asn Ala Glu Val Arg Thr Arg Leu Leu Gly His  

453  CTG GCC AGC TGC ATG ACC CAG ATC AAC GCC ATC AAC TAC CCC GTG  
142  Leu Ala Ser Cys Met Thr Glu Ile Asn Ala Ile Asn Tyr Pro Val  

498  CCG CCC CCG CTG CCA CCA CCC GCA GCC ATC AAC GCC ATC AAC GTC CCC  
157  Pro Pro Pro Leu Pro Pro Pro Pro Ala Ala Phe Gly Pro Pro  

543  CTG GTG CCG CCG GGC GGA GGC GCG GGG CCG CTC CAC GCC GTA CCC  
172  Leu Val Pro Pro Gly Gly Gly Ala Gly Pro Leu Pro Ala Ala Val Pro  

588  TGC AAG CCA GGT GCC GAT GCG GCC AAG GTG TAC GGC GGT TTC CAG  
187  Cys Lys Pro Gly Ala Asp Ala Ala Lys Val Tyr Gly Gly Phe Gln  

633  CTG CTG CCT GCC TCT GAT GGG CAG TTC GCC TTC CAC ATC CCC AGC  
202  Leu Leu Pro Ala Ser Asp Gly Gln Phe Ala Phe Leu Ile Pro Ser  

678  GCT GCC TTT GCT CCC GGC GGG GCT GTG CTG CCC CTC TAT GGC GGT  
217  Ala Ala Phe Ala Pro Gly Gly Ala Val Leu Pro Leu Tyr Gly Gly  

723  CCC CCC ACA GCT GCC ACC ACC GCC TCG CCT CCC GGC CCC TCA CCC  
232  Pro Pro Thr Ala Ala Thr Thr Ala Ser Pro Pro Gly Pro Ser Pro  

768  GGC ACC GCT GAC TCA GTC TGA  
247  Gly Thr Ala Asp Ser Val End
Figure 4-11 Sequence of *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5*

Arrow indicates an ATG start codon upstream and out of frame of the correct translation start codon.
Figure 4-12 Electroporation of the gdf7-domain and rhombic lip with the cHairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 or cHairy2-IRESeGFPm5 constructs

E4 embryos were electroporated with CAβ-GFP (A – D), cHairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 (E – H) or cHairy2-IRESeGFPm5 (I – L) constructs into the right-hand side upper rhombic lip and gdf7 domain. Embryos were incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. The expression of gdf7 (blue) and cath1 (red) was assessed by whole-mount in situ hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. A, C, E, G, I, K show the electroporated side and B, D, F, H, J, L show the un-electroporated (control) side of flat-mounted hindbrains. Anterior is oriented upwards. C, black arrow cath1 expression is slightly downregulated within the electroporated domain. E, G, I, K, black arrows, downregulated gdf7 and cath1 expression. C, E, G, I, K, white arrows, the electroporated domain. D, F, H, J, L, arrowheads, an equivalent domain to the electroporated domain on the un-electroporated side.

Scale bar: 200µm
IRESeGFPm5 construct did not have a significant effect on the efficacy of translation of cHairy2ΔWRPW.

Electroporation of the chairy2-IRESeGFPm5 construct had the same effect as electroporation of the chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 construct. Overexpression of full length chairy2 at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary also caused a downregulation of gdf7 and cath1 expression in the electroporated domain in comparison with the same region of the un-electroporated side of the brain (Figure 4-12 I–L, arrows, electroporated domain; arrowheads, similar region on the un-electroporated side n= 5/11).

**4.2.9 Overexpression of chairy2ΔWRPW or full length chairy2 at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary causes a non-autonomous loss of roof plate epithelium- expressed cyp26C1**

The localisation of organiser properties at the hindbrain neuroepithelium – roof plate epithelium boundary, marked by gdf7 expression (Chapter 3), leads to the hypothesis that this domain could signal not only to the adjacent neuroepithelium, but also to the adjacent roof plate epithelium to direct development of the choroid plexus. Since the overexpression of chairy2ΔWRPW or chairy2 at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary disrupts gdf7 and adjacent cath1 expression, I investigated whether the electroporation of these constructs into the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary had any effect on the expression of the roof plate epithelium- expressed cyp26C1.

For the most part electroporation of the CAβ-GFP construct into roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary had no effect on roof plate epithelial cyp26C1 expression (Figure 4-13 A – D, n=3/4). However, on one occasion there was a slight downregulation of roof plate epithelial cyp26C1 expression within the electroporated domain (Figure 4-13 E, F, arrows, n=1/4). The other GFP-positive cells in Figure 4-13 F are electroporated overlying skin cells (arrowhead).

In contrast, electroporation of chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 or chairy2-IRESeGFPm5 into the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary caused both an autonomous and a non-autonomous loss of roof plate epithelial cyp26C1 expression (Figure 4-14 A – H, arrows indicate non-autonomous loss of cyp26C1 expression, chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 n=3/8, chairy2-IRESeGFPm5 n=4/6). Therefore not only does overexpression of chairy2ΔWRPW or chairy2 into the hindbrain neuroepithelium – roof plate epithelium boundary cause a downregulation of gdf7 expression, but it also disrupts a
Figure 4-13 Effect of electroporation of the gdf7-domain and rhombic lip with CAβ-GFP on cyp26C1 expression

E4 embryos were electroporated with CAβ-GFP into the right-hand side upper rhombic lip and gdf7 domain (A – F). Embryos were incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. The expression of cyp26C1 was assessed by whole-mount in situ hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. B, D, F are confocal micrographs of the electroporated region indicated in A, C, E. Roof plates are mounted with the pial surface upwards and anterior oriented upwards. Arrows, slight downregulation of cyp26C1 expression within the electroporated domain. Arrowheads indicate electroporated epithelial cells.

Scale bar: 100µm
Figure 4-14 Electroporation of \( c\text{Hairy2}\Delta\text{WRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5} \) or \( c\text{Hairy2-IRESeGFPm5} \) into the \( \text{gdf7} \)-domain and rhombic lip causes non-autonomous loss of \( \text{cyp26C1} \) expression

E4 embryos were electroporated with \( c\text{Hairy2}\Delta\text{WRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5} \) (A – D) or \( c\text{Hairy2-IRESeGFPm5} \) (E – H) into the right-hand side upper rhombic lip and \( \text{gdf7} \) domain. Embryos were incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. The expression of \( \text{cyp26C1} \) was assessed by whole-mount \textit{in situ} hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. B, D, F, H are confocal micrographs of the electroporated region indicated in A, C, E, G. Roof plates are mounted with the pial surface upwards and anterior oriented upwards. Arrows indicate non-autonomous loss of roof plate epithelial \( \text{cyp26C1} \) expression.

Scale bar: 100µm
signalling centre there that is required to maintain the expression of \textit{cyp26C1} in the roof plate epithelium.

4.2.10 The effects on \textit{gdf7} and adjacent \textit{ttr} expression of electroporation of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with \textit{chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5} or \textit{chairy2-IRESeGFPm5}

Since autonomous signals from the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary were required to maintain the expression of \textit{cyp26C1} in the roof plate epithelium, I investigated whether these signals were also required for the expression of the choroid plexus epithelial marker, \textit{ttr}, which begins to be expressed at the fourth ventricle roof plate at E4 in chick (Figure 2-9).

Electroporation of the upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary at E4 with CAβ-GFP, for the most part, did not have any effect on \textit{gdf7} and \textit{ttr} expression (Figure 4-15 A – F, n=3/4). However, in one instance, \textit{gdf7} expression was downregulated within the electroporated domain (Figure 4-15 G – I, arrows, n=1/4), confirming that there is a non-specific effect on gene expression that occurs occasionally with the electroporation of constructs at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary in E4 chick embryos.

Electroporation of the upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary at E4 with \textit{chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5} caused a downregulation of \textit{gdf7} expression in the electroporated domain and a non-autonomous loss of \textit{ttr} expression in the adjacent roof plate epithelium after 24 hours (Figure 4-16 A – F, arrowheads indicate downregulation of \textit{gdf7}, arrows indicate non-autonomous loss of \textit{ttr} expression, n=3/4). On one occasion, \textit{ttr} expression was lost non-autonomously, but \textit{gdf7} expression was intact within the electroporated domain (Figure 4-16 G – I, arrow indicates non-autonomous loss of \textit{ttr} expression, n=1/4). This is likely to reflect a disruption of the signalling centre present at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary that is required to induce or maintain \textit{ttr} expression, but the disruption may not have been sufficient to result in a downregulation of \textit{gdf7} expression.

Electroporation of the upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary at E4 with \textit{chairy2-IRESeGFPm5} had similar effects to those observed when \textit{chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5} was electroporated. \textit{gdf7} expression was downregulated within the electroporated domain and \textit{ttr} expression was lost non-autonomously in the adjacent roof plate epithelium (Figure 4-17 A – F, arrowheads indicate downregulation of \textit{gdf7} expression, arrows indicate non-autonomous loss of \textit{ttr} expression, n=3/5). As with
Figure 4-15 Effect of electroporation of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with CAβ-GFP on gdf7 and ttr expression

E4 embryos were electroporated with CAβ-GFP into the right-hand side upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary (A – I). Embryos were incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. The expression of gdf7 and ttr was assessed by whole-mount *in situ* hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. B, E, H are higher magnification images of the electroporated region shown in A, D, G. C, F, I are confocal micrographs of the regions shown in B, E, H. Roof plates are mounted with the ventricular surface upwards and anterior oriented upwards. Arrows indicate loss of gdf7 expression in the electroporated domain.

Scale bar: 100µm.
Figure 4-16 Effect of electroporation of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with \textit{cHairy2\textDelta\text{WRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5}} on \textit{gdf7} and \textit{ttr} expression

E4 embryos were electroporated with \textit{cHairy2\textDelta\text{WRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5}} into the right-hand side upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary (A – I). Embryos were incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. The expression of \textit{gdf7} and \textit{ttr} was assessed by whole-mount \textit{in situ} hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. B, E, H are higher magnification images of the electroporated region shown in A, D, G. C, F, I are confocal micrographs of the regions shown in B, E, H. Roof plates are mounted with the ventricular surface upwards and anterior oriented upwards. Arrowheads, downregulation of \textit{gdf7} expression within the electroporated domain. Arrows, non-autonomous downregulation of \textit{ttr} expression in the roof plate epithelium adjacent to the electroporated domain.

Scale bar: 100\textmu m.
Figure 4-17 Effect of electroporation of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with cHairy2-IRESeGFPm5 on gdf7 and ttr expression

E4 embryos were electroporated with cHairy2-IRESeGFPm5 into the right-hand side upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary (A – I). Embryos were incubated for 24 hours prior to collection. The expression of gdf7 and ttr was assessed by whole-mount in situ hybridisation and the electroporation site was detected by whole-mount immunohistochemistry for GFP. B, E, H are higher magnification images of the electroporated region shown in A, D, G. C, F, I are confocal micrographs of the regions shown in B, E, H. Roof plates are mounted with the ventricular surface upwards and anterior oriented upwards. Arrowheads, loss of gdf7 expression within the electroporated domain. Arrows, non-autonomous loss of ttr expression.

Scale bar: 100µm
electroporation of the *chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5* construct, on one occasion, electroporation of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with *chairy2-IRESeGFPm5* caused a non-autonomous loss of *ttr* expression but had no effect on *gdf7* expression (Figure 4-17 G – I, arrows indicate a non-autonomous loss of *ttr* expression, n=1/5). Therefore electroporation of the upper roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with *chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5* or *chairy2-IRESeGFPm5* disrupts a signalling centre there, resulting in a non-autonomous loss of *ttr* expression in the roof plate epithelium and, for the most part, an autonomous downregulation of *gdf7* expression.
4.3 Discussion

The results described in this chapter show that ectopic expression of *delta1* in the roof plate epithelium induces the conversion of roof plate epithelial cells into roof plate boundary cells, marked by the expression of *gdf7* and upregulated *cyp26C1* expression (Figure 4-3, 4-6). *delta1* expression also induced *chairy2* expression in the roof plate epithelium and *chairy2* expression is required at the correct level at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary for roof plate boundary *gdf7* expression to be maintained (Figure 4-5, 4-8, 4-10, 4-12, 4-16, 4-17). In this chapter it was also shown that the roof plate boundary not only signals to the adjacent neuroepithelium but it is also required to signal to the adjacent roof plate epithelium to maintain the expression of *cyp26C1* and permit the induction or maintenance of *ttr* expression and hence choroid plexus epithelium differentiation (Figure 4-16, 4-17, 4-14). However, it was also noted that immediately adjacent to an expanded roof plate boundary domain, *ttr* expression was repressed (Figure 4-7). This leads to a model of roof plate boundary function presented below in Figure 4-18 where the roof plate boundary both promotes choroid plexus differentiation at a distance from it, but inhibits its differentiation immediately adjacent to it. The possible function of this *ttr*-negative margin is discussed below.

4.3.1 Problems associated with the use of electroporation of the E4 chick roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary to assess gene function

The E4 chick roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary is a very thin region of tissue so it is unsurprising that electroporation of a control CAβ-GFP construct can cause a basal level of damage to the tissue that is observed as a small increase in cell death (Figure 4-10) and a downregulation of gene expression (Figure 4-9, 4-12, 4-13, 4-15). However, cell death associated with electroporation of the *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5* construct was significantly higher than that associated with electroporation of the CAβ-GFP construct (Figure 4-10). Additionally, the effect of electroporation of the CAβ-GFP construct on *gdf7*, *cathl* and *cyp26C1* expression was qualitatively milder than the effect of electroporation of the *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5*, the *chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5* or the *chairy2-IRESeGFPm5* constructs (Figure 4-12, 4-14, 4-16, 4-17). Lastly, electroporation of the CAβ-GFP construct never resulted in a non-autonomous loss of *cyp26C1* or *ttr* expression. Therefore although electroporation of CAβ-GFP may result in autonomous effects on gene expression, only the overexpression of *chairy2ΔWRPW* or *chairy2* resulted in a reduction in signalling capacity of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary. Thus if electroporation of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary with control constructs such as CAβ-GFP is carried out alongside
electroporation with experimental constructs, valid conclusions can be drawn about gene function by comparing the effects of electroporation of experimental constructs with the effects of electroporation of control constructs.

4.3.2 Ligand driven Notch signalling in the roof plate epithelium is sufficient to convert roof plate epithelial cells to roof plate boundary cells

Tissue interactions between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium are sufficient to convert roof plate epithelial cells to a roof plate boundary-organiser fate, marked by *gdf7*-expression (Chapter 3). Activation of Notch signalling by overexpression of *delta1* in the roof plate epithelium is also sufficient to induce the expression of *gdf7* and *hairy2* there (Figure 4-3, 4-4, 4-5), indicating that Delta-Notch interactions mediate the hindbrain neuroepithelial – roof plate epithelial induction of *gdf7* and *hairy2* expression observed in co-culture experiments. Analysis of the expression patterns of Notch ligands and receptors at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary of the E5 chick embryo shows that *delta1* expression has a sharp boundary adjacent to the *gdf7*-domain, and that *notch2* is expressed in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-6). Therefore it is likely that the induction of *gdf7* observed when *delta1* is expressed in the roof plate epithelium, is mediated by *notch2*, and that in vivo, a Delta1 – Notch2 interaction serves to maintain the *gdf7*-positive roof plate boundary-organiser.

Induction of *gdf7* in the roof plate epithelium appeared to be cell-non autonomous (Figure 4-3, 4-4, 4-7). This fits with the known mechanism of action of the DSL family of ligands, which are present at the plasma membranes of cells but *trans*-activate Notch receptors on adjacent cells (reviewed in Bray, 2006). The DSL family of ligands are also known to cell-autonomously inhibit the activation of Notch receptors (known as *cis*-inhibition) (de Celis and Bray, 1997; Micchelli et al., 1997; Sakamoto et al., 2002; reviewed in del Alamo et al., 2011) thereby limiting the effects of overexpression of *delta1* to cells adjacent to those ectopically expressing *delta1*.

The electroporation technique utilised in theses experiments resulted in overexpression of *delta1* in the roof plate epithelium but also in the neighbouring rhombic lip (Figure 4-2), however, *gdf7* expression was only induced in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 4-3, 4-7). One explanation for this is that *cis*-inhibition by *serrate1* and *delta1* expressed in the rhombic lip (Chapter 2) prevent induction of *gdf7* in this tissue. However an alternative explanation is that hindbrain neuroepithelium is not competent to express *gdf7* and only hindbrain roof plate-derived tissue is competent. It would be interesting to investigate if the overexpression of *lmx1a* (a transcription factor that is necessary and sufficient for roof plate
specification (Millonig et al., 2000; Chizhikov and Millen, 2004b; Chizhikov et al., 2006)) along with delta1 is sufficient to induce gdf7 expression in the hindbrain neuroepithelium.

Overexpression of delta1 in the roof plate epithelium not only induced gdf7 expression, but also upregulated cyp26C1 within the electroporated domain. This indicates that high-level expression of cyp26C1 is also a marker of the roof plate boundary-organiser. Interestingly, the induction of cyp26C1 and chairy2 expression in the roof plate epithelium by ectopic expression of delta1 appears to be cell-autonomous (Figure 4-5, 4-6), unlike the induction of gdf7 expression. A possible explanation for this is that a lower threshold of Notch activation within cells is required for the expression of cyp26C1 and chairy2 in comparison with gdf7. By this hypothesis, the level of cis-inhibition of Notch activation by Delta1 would not be sufficient to completely abolish trans-activation by Delta1 from neighbouring cells and hence the low level of Notch activation within delta1-expressing cells would be sufficient to induce cyp26C1 and chairy2 expression, but not gdf7 expression.

Activated Notch signalling has been shown in numerous developmental situations to be important for the specification or maintenance of boundary-cell fates, such as the dorsoventral boundary of the Drosophila wing imaginal disc, hindbrain rhombomere boundaries in zebrafish, the apical ectodermal ridge of the chick limb bud, the zona limitans intrathalamica and, more recently, the midbrain-hindbrain boundary in the chick (Rulifson and Blair, 1995; Laufer et al., 1997; Rodriguez-Esteban et al., 1997; Zeltser et al., 2001; Cheng et al., 2004; Tossell et al., 2011). Thus the E3 – E5 chick hindbrain roof plate boundary represents another case where a boundary cell-fate is induced or maintained by the action of activated Notch signalling, and therefore provides support for the idea that Notch signalling operating to specify or maintain boundary-organiser cell fate within an epithelium is an ancient, evolutionarily conserved mechanism.

Aside from the studies carried out on zebrafish rhombomere boundaries, previous studies have largely involved experimental manipulations carried out prior to the formation of boundaries so can either not distinguish between an involvement of Notch activation for the specification or maintenance of boundary cells, or focus mainly on the specification of boundary cells. In studies described here, manipulations were carried out at E3 (st16 – 17) when the roof plate boundary (as assessed by gdf7 expression) had already formed (Figure 2-3). Any conclusions can hence only address the involvement of Notch signalling in the maintenance of the roof plate boundary. Whether Notch signalling is also involved in the establishment of the roof plate boundary requires further investigation.

The hindbrain roof plate boundary is known to be a proliferative source of choroid plexus epithelial cells from E12.5 onwards in the mouse embryo (Huang et al., 2009). My findings
therefore shed new light on the findings of Hunter & Dynecki (2007) who showed that constitutive activation of Notch in all derivatives of gdf7-expressing cells in mouse results in greatly expanded choroid plexus epithelium that is ectopically proliferative at P0. My findings suggest that rather than the expression of Notch-intracellular domain promoting proliferation in all gdf7-positive cell derivatives, the expression of activated Notch may specify cells as boundary-organiser cells that divide asymmetrically to maintain their own population as well as give rise to differentiated choroid plexus epithelial cells.

4.3.3 The role of cHairy2 in the maintenance of the roof plate boundary-organiser

Hes genes are well known downstream effectors of Notch signalling, but in addition to this, are also well characterised as being essential for the maintenance of boundary-localised organisers in the mouse and in the zebrafish, but not necessarily in a Notch-dependant fashion (Hirata et al., 2001; Geling et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005; Baek et al., 2006; Kageyama et al., 2007). cHairy2, a chick orthologue of mouse hes1 (Jouve et al., 2000), shows upregulated expression within the wild-type gdf7-positive roof plate boundary (Figure 2-7). In the same manner as I have demonstrated for gdf7, cHairy2 is induced in the roof plate epithelium at both an experimentally derived interface between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium (Figure 3-21, 3-22) and after ectopic expression of delta1 in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 4-5). Conversely, electroporation of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary of E4 chick embryos with either cHairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5 or cHairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 results in a downregulation of expression of gdf7 at E5 (Figure 4-8, 4-12, 4-16). Together, these results support a role for cHairy2 in maintaining the gdf7-positive boundary downstream of Notch signalling.

In these experiments the expression of cath1 is also downregulated adjacent to downregulated gdf7 expression. Given the dependence of cath1 on an intact roof plate boundary in culture experiments (Chapter 3), a parsimonious explanation is that its expression is regulated non-autonomously by the gdf7-positive roof plate boundary. Due to the breadth of the electroporated territory, a cell autonomous effect of cHairy2 disruption on cath1 cannot be discounted. If the signals responsible for the induction or maintenance of cath1 by an ectopic gdf7-positive organiser (demonstrated in Chapter 3) could be determined (likely to be Gdf7 itself or other Bmps expressed there), then these signals could be co-expressed with cHairy2ΔWRPW to determine whether cath1 could be rescued independent of endogenous cHairy2 levels.
Studies of the role of hes genes in the formation and maintenance of boundaries have indicated that the experimentally induced loss of Hes expression at these boundaries results in increased neurogenesis and the spread of neighbouring neurogenic genes into boundary regions (Gelling et al., 2003; Gelling et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005; Baek et al., 2006). In contrast, in my experiments, the ectopic expression of the proneural gene cath1 was never observed in the gdf7-domain following electroporation with the chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5 construct. Instead, the downregulation of gdf7 is, at least in part, due to increased cell death in the electroporated domain caused by expression of chairy2ΔWRPW, in comparison with electroporation with the control CAβ-GFP construct (Figure 4-10). An explanation for the disparity between previous studies and this study may be that in the previous studies, Hes activity was removed from the outset, whereas here the loss of Hes function was induced acutely, after boundary formation. Early Hes activity may thus, during boundary formation or immediately afterwards, be required to prevent ectopic neurogenesis within the boundary, whereas later Hes activity may be required to maintain cells in an organiser-like state and prevent their ectopic cell death.

Overexpression of full length chairy2 at the E4 roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary had the same effect as expression of chairy2ΔWRPW. Both caused autonomous downregulation of gdf7 and adjacent cath1 expression (Figure 4-12), but also autonomous downregulation of cyp26C1 at the roof plate boundary, and a non-autonomous loss of roof plate epithelial cyp26C1 and ttr expression (Figure 4-14, 4-16, 4-17). One explanation for this is that the cHairy2ΔWRPW protein does not act in a dominant negative fashion and instead both cHairy2ΔWRPW and full length cHairy2 directly repress the expression of gdf7, cath1 and cyp26C1. Hes proteins are repressor-type basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH) transcription factors and are known to actively mediate repression of gene expression through homodimerisation and the recruitment of Groucho/TLE co-repressors through their WRPW domain (Paroush et al., 1994; Fisher et al., 1996; Grbavec et al., 1998; Kageyama et al., 2008). However, Hes transcription factors can also passively repress transcription via heterodimerisation with activator-type bHLH transcription factors, a mechanism which does not require the WRPW domain (Dawson et al., 1995; Kageyama et al., 2007). Therefore cHairy2 ΔWRPW could still be a functional repressor even though it is missing the WRPW domain. However this explanation cannot explain the non-autonomous loss of cyp26C1 and ttr expression in the roof plate epithelium adjacent to the electroporated roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary. Instead an alternative explanation is favoured whereby the precise level of chairy2 expression is important for the correct maintenance of the gdf7-positive boundary-organiser. In support of this, particular modes of expression of Hes1 correlate with the specification of cells, and the mode of Hes1
expression is regulated by an autoregulatory negative feedback loop (Takebayashi et al., 1994; Hirata et al., 2002; Baek et al., 2006; Shimojo et al., 2008). Therefore overexpression of full length *chairy2* could disrupt its own mode of expression and therefore its function in the maintenance of boundary cells, thereby also acting in a dominant negative manner.

Although *chairy2* expression is induced in the roof plate epithelium both at an experimentally derived interface between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium (Figure 3-21, 3-22) and after ectopic expression of *delta1* in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 4-5), its ectopic expression in the roof plate epithelium is not sufficient to induce *gdf7* or upregulate *cyp26C1* expression there, as ectopic activation of Notch signalling by *delta1* is capable of doing. This implies that Notch activation by *delta1* in the roof plate epithelium induces other pathways in parallel to *chairy2* activation that are responsible for the induction of *gdf7* expression. However, the lack of expansion of the roof plate boundary by *chairy2* overexpression in the roof plate epithelium could have been due to embryos being electroporated at E4 and assessed for effects at E5, rather than being electroporated at E3 and assessed for effects at E5. The lack of expansion of the roof plate boundary into the hindbrain neuroepithelium or the roof plate epithelium is also in contradiction with the findings of Baek et al. (2006), who find that misexpression of Hes1 in telencephalic compartments via retrovirus is sufficient to decrease cell proliferation rates and neurogenesis, both characteristics of boundary cells. However, they did not demonstrate the complete conversion of cells to boundary cells by the expression of boundary cell markers.

**4.3.4 The roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary signals to both the hindbrain neuroepithelium and the roof plate epithelium**

In Chapter 3 I showed that the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary marked by *gdf7* expression signals to the hindbrain neuroepithelium to induce *cath1* expression in the adjacent neuroepithelium. In this chapter I have demonstrated that signals from the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary are also required to maintain *cyp26C1* expression (Figure 4-14) and maintain or induce *ttr* expression in the roof plate epithelium (Figure 4-16, 4-17), as the expression of these genes is lost non-autonomously when the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary is perturbed by the expression of *chairy2∆WRPW* or the overexpression of full length *chairy2*. Therefore the roof plate boundary signals to both the hindbrain neuroepithelium and the roof plate epithelium to regulate gene expression.

Since *cyp26C1* expression is present in the roof plate epithelium at E4 (Figure 2-10) and electroporations were carried out at E4, it can be concluded that signals from the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary are required for the maintenance of
As *ttr* expression starts at E4 in the chick fourth ventricle roof plate epithelium (Figure 2-9) it cannot be concluded whether induction or maintenance of *ttr* expression was perturbed by electroporations of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary. To determine this, the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary of E5 chicken embryos could be electroporated with the *cHairy2AWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5* or the *cHairy2-IRESeGFPm5* construct to determine if maintenance of *ttr* expression is specifically affected.

Interestingly, expansion of the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary, marked by expanded *gdf7* and high-level *cyp26C1* expression after ectopic *delta1* expression in the roof plate epithelium, did not induce ectopic *ttr* expression adjacent to it (Figure 4-7). This shows that although signals from the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary are necessary for the induction or maintenance of *ttr* expression in the E5 chick hindbrain roof plate epithelium, these signals are not sufficient to ectopically induce *ttr* expression in the E5 roof plate epithelium. This may represent a lack of competence of the E5 roof plate epithelium to respond to signals from an expanded roof plate boundary. Earlier manipulations, prior to E3, may therefore demonstrate an ability of the roof plate boundary to induce ectopic choroid plexus differentiation, although targeted electroporation of a small domain of the hindbrain roof plate at earlier stages represents a significant technical challenge.

*ttr* expression was downregulated within the roof plate epithelium domain of *delta1* overexpression. Thus activation of Notch signalling by *delta1* within the roof plate epithelium cell-autonomously downregulates choroid plexus epithelium differentiation. This may represent conversion of the roof plate epithelium to a roof plate boundary-cell fate, although this conversion could only have been partial as *gdf7* expression was not cell-autonomously induced in all electroporated roof plate epithelial cells (Figure 4-7 D – L). Alternatively, the loss of *ttr* expression could have been due to non-autonomous signals from an expanded roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary. In Figure 4-7 D – F, this expanded boundary was marked by induced *gdf7* expression, however in Figure 4-7 G – L it is possible that a functional, expanded roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary was induced by *delta1* expression in the roof plate epithelium, but a complete conversion of roof plate epithelial cells to a roof plate boundary cell fate was not achieved so *gdf7* was not ectopically expressed. By this hypothesis, the *gdf7*-positive boundary-organiser is required to induce or maintain *ttr* expression at a distance from it, but might repress its expression immediately adjacent to it, as illustrated in Figure 4-18. To test this, more refined electroporations of *delta1* into the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain
Figure 4-18 Models of how the roof plate boundary-organiser signals to both neuroepithelium and roof plate epithelium

Schematic of the roof plate (RP) epithelium – neuroepithelium boundary in a transverse section through the chick hindbrain. The RP boundary-organiser is marked by *gdf7* expression and high *cyp26C1* expression. The RP boundary-organiser signals to the adjacent neuroepithelium to maintain *cathl* expression in the rhombic lip (Chapter 3). One proposed model for how the RP boundary-organiser patterns the adjacent RP epithelium is that it expresses a signal (X), which exhibits a concentration gradient in the RP epithelium. At high concentrations this inhibits choroid plexus epithelium (ChPE) differentiation, but below a certain threshold it is required to promote or permit ChPE differentiation (A).

An alternative model (B) is that short range signals (X) from the RP boundary-organiser inhibit ChPE differentiation, but long range signals (Y) that can diffuse further than short range signals promote or permit ChPE differentiation.
neuroepithelium boundary could be carried out to test if a non-autonomous loss of \( ttr \) expression is ever observed adjacent to the electroporated domain.

Two models of how signals from the roof plate boundary could both inhibit \( ttr \) expression adjacent to it and promote \( ttr \) expression at a distance from it are presented in Figure 4-18. One signal from the roof plate boundary-organiser could be responsible for both inhibition and be required for \( ttr \) expression, if it is present in the roof plate epithelium in a concentration gradient away from the roof plate boundary. At high concentrations it would inhibit expression of \( ttr \), but at low concentrations it would promote it. Alternatively the signals that inhibit and promote \( ttr \) expression could be different. Short range signals might mediate inhibition of \( ttr \) expression, but long range signals might be responsible for promotion of \( ttr \) expression.

Despite its importance, relatively little was known about the specification of the fourth ventricle choroid plexus epithelium. In mice it is known that most, if not all, of the hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium derives solely from \( gdf7 \)-positive progenitor cells (Hunter and Dymecki, 2007), but whether mechanisms are required to specify and pattern the differentiation of the hindbrain roof plate epithelium into choroid plexus epithelium was not known. Here I demonstrate that non-autonomous signals from the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary are required for the development of the chick hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium and propose a model whereby signals from the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary are not only required to specify the choroid plexus epithelium, but also pattern the roof plate epithelium, inhibiting ectopic choroid plexus differentiation in the domain immediately adjacent to the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary. The function of this inhibition would likely be to reserve a domain of progenitors that would go on to contribute to choroid plexus epithelium growth throughout development. Such a domain has recently been demonstrated to exist in mouse embryos (Huang et al., 2009).
Chapter 5 Discussion

Studies that make up this thesis have shown that the chicken embryonic hindbrain roof plate can be divided into at least two domains, the roof plate epithelium and the roof plate boundaries. The organiser properties of the hindbrain roof plate are localised at the roof plate boundaries, which are marked by the expression of gdf7 and high levels of expression of the chick hes1 orthologues, chairy1 and chairy2. A gdf7-positive domain can induce or maintain the expression of cath1 in the adjacent hindbrain neuroepithelium of E4 – E6 chicken embryos. This gdf7-positive roof plate boundary is also required to non-autonomously maintain the roof plate epithelium-expressed cyp26C1, and permit the differentiation of the choroid plexus epithelium from roof plate epithelium, as assessed by ttr expression, in E5 brains. I have presented a model whereby signals from the roof plate boundary repress ttr expression immediately adjacent to it but promote ttr expression at a distance from it (Figure 4-18).

As part of this thesis I have also shown that tissue interactions between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium can regenerate the gdf7-positive organiser in roof plate epithelium-derived tissue at the interface between the two tissues, shedding light on the mechanism that maintains the gdf7-positive organiser in vivo. The molecular basis of this interaction is likely to be largely mediated by Notch signalling as ectopic expression of delta1 in the roof plate epithelium can induce a boundary-cell fate. This induction is likely to be via the notch2 receptor. As further support for the role of activated Notch signalling at the roof plate boundary, chairy1 and chairy2, which are upregulated in the roof plate boundary, are well-known downstream targets of Notch signalling (Jouve et al., 2000). chairy2 was also induced by delta1 expression in the roof plate epithelium and was induced in the roof plate epithelium at an experimental interface between roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium. The role of cHairy2 at the roof plate boundary was further investigated and it was found that overexpression of both a truncated version of cHairy2 (cHairy2∆WRPW) and a full length version had dominant negative effects on the gdf7-positive roof plate boundary organiser, in line with observations in hes1;hes3;hes5 triple-null mice that show that hes genes are required for the formation or maintenance of all boundary-localised organisers in the developing CNS (Baek et al., 2006).

Together my findings redefine the hindbrain roof plate organiser, confirm and extend an emergent consensus model for organiser characteristics and shed new light on how choroid plexus development is coordinated. Specifically, the roof plate appears to be another example of an organiser that is maintained by a well-conserved mechanism involving tissue
interactions that activate Notch signalling and downstream Hes transcription factors at boundaries.

5.1 Re-definition of the hindbrain roof plate organiser

For the most part the roof plate comprises a narrow strip of cells present at the dorsal midline of the developing vertebrate central nervous system (CNS), however at hindbrain level it is expanded to form a diamond-shaped epithelium that tents over the fourth ventricle (Chizhikov and Millen, 2005). The results of this thesis demonstrate that the E4 – E5 diamond-shaped roof plate should not be thought of as a single domain. In chick it can be separated into at least two different regions; a roof plate boundary, which is characterised by the expression of gdf7 and high level wnt1, cyp26C1, chairy1 and chairy2 expression, and the roof plate epithelium that comprises the domain that lies between the two roof plate boundaries. The roof plate epithelium can be further subdivided into a lateral cyp26C1-positive, ttr-negative domain, a more medial cyp26C1-positive, ttr-positive domain, and an even more medial cyp26C1-negative, ttr-negative domain, at the ages when the choroid plexus epithelium is beginning to differentiate (E4 – E5). The subdivision of this domain indicates that the roof plate epithelium is patterned at these stages by various mechanisms that will be discussed later in this chapter.

I have presented several lines of evidence that suggest that the organiser properties of the chick hindbrain roof plate localise to the gdf7-positive boundaries. Signals from the gdf7-positive roof plate boundary are required for the maintenance of cath1 expression in the adjacent neuroepithelium from E4 – E6. Furthermore, an induced gdf7-positive domain could rescue the loss of cath1 expression in the rhombic lip, thus demonstrating that the gdf7-positive roof plate boundary is necessary and sufficient for the maintenance of cath1 expression in the rhombic lip at these ages. An induced gdf7-domain could also induce cath1 expression at an ectopic dorsoventral position within the hindbrain neuroepithelium from E4 to E5, raising the possibility that organiser properties resident at the roof plate boundary serve to pattern the dorsoventral axis of the hindbrain from the outset, inducing the expression of cath1 in the rhombic lips. Indeed gdf7 expression in the hindbrain begins at st14 (E2.5), preceding that of cath1, suggesting that the roof plate boundary differentiates prior to the specification of the cath1-positive progenitor pool.

chairy1 and chairy2 are the chick orthologues of hes1 (Jouve et al., 2000). High and persistent Hes1 expression has been shown to mark organisers such as the zona limitans intrathalamica (ZLI), the midbrain-hindbrain boundary and the spinal cord roof plate and floor plate in mouse (Baek et al., 2006). Therefore the persistent, elevated chairy1 and
chairy2 expression at the chick hindbrain roof plate boundary and the lack of expression in the roof plate epithelium itself, from E4 to E6, supports the model that the roof plate organiser properties are localised to its boundaries.

Previous studies have presented a model of hindbrain roof plate as a homogenous signalling domain, required for the specification of the dorsal-most neural progenitor pool, which is marked by the expression of the bHLH transcription factor *math1* in mouse, or *cath1* in chick (Chizhikov et al., 2006). This is a reasonable assumption as, in the mouse, *gdf7* and another roof plate marker, the LIM-homeodomain transcription factor, *lmx1a*, are expressed both at the roof plate boundary and in the lateral roof plate epithelium at upper and lower rhombic lip levels at E10.5/11.5 (equivalent to E4/5 in chick) (Landsberg et al., 2005; Chizhikov et al., 2006; Mishima et al., 2009). However *gdf7* and *lmx1a* are both expressed in the roof plate boundary at a higher mRNA level than in the roof plate epithelium. Further, the roof plate boundary is also characterised by high level mRNA expression of *wnt1* at both upper and lower rhombic lip levels (Landsberg et al., 2005; Chizhikov et al., 2006; Mishima et al., 2009). Therefore although no specific marker of the hindbrain roof plate boundary has yet been identified in mouse, the roof plate boundary displays characteristic high-level mRNA expression of *gdf7, lmx1a* and *wnt1*. It is therefore likely that the boundary-localised organiser model proposed for the chick hindbrain roof plate may also apply to the mouse hindbrain roof plate at these stages.

The situation in zebrafish embryos also supports a distinction between the roof plate boundaries and the rest of the roof plate epithelium as *gdf6a/7* is expressed at the roof plate boundaries not by the entire hindbrain roof plate (Elsen et al., 2008; Chaplin et al., 2010).

**5.2 Towards a general model for CNS organisers**

A number of organisers in the developing CNS are found at boundaries between molecularly distinguishable compartments of tissue that they are responsible for patterning (Kiecker and Lumsden, 2005). Examples include the ZLI, which patterns the adjacent thalamus and pre-thalamus (Kiecker and Lumsden, 2004), the midbrain-hindbrain boundary, which patterns the adjacent midbrain and rhombomere 1 of the hindbrain (Wassef and Joyner, 1997), and rhombomere boundaries, which have been shown to pattern neurogenesis in adjacent rhombomeres in zebrafish (Riley et al., 2004). The chick hindbrain roof plate is now another example of an organiser that fits into this model, with its organiser properties being located at its boundaries with the neuroepithelium. The spinal cord roof plate might also fit into this model as it is composed of two *gdf7*-positive domains separated by a medial *gdf7*-negative domain, therefore its organiser properties might be localised to these *gdf7*-positive
‘boundaries’. These discoveries raise the possibility that the roof plate at other anteroposterior locations must also be defined as a boundary-localised organiser located between molecularly distinguishable compartments. The ablation of the telencephalic roof plate via the expression of diphtheria toxin A subunit under the control of the gdf7-locus in mouse caused the reduction of lhx2 expression and a decrease in cortical size, showing that the roof plate is required to signal to the lateral telencephalon for its proper development (Monuki et al., 2001). The telencephalic midline begins as a narrow medial roof plate domain located at the dorsal midline, but later invaginates forming three distinct regions (Monuki et al., 2001; Shinozaki et al., 2004). From most lateral to most medial these are the cortical hem, the choroid plexus epithelium and the roof plate epithelium (Shinozaki et al., 2004). These three domains express a range of signalling molecules belonging to the Wnt and Bmp family (Furuta et al., 1997; Lee et al., 2000b; Shinozaki et al., 2004), however a boundary-localised organiser domain equivalent to the gdf7-positive roof plate boundary of the chick hindbrain might be resident at the interface between the cortical hem and the choroid plexus domain. Whether such a boundary-localised signalling centre exists within the telencephalic roof plate has not been considered, although more recently focus has been placed on how the hem and the choroid plexus epithelium become established as separate domains that arise from the same primordium, and how the position of the border between these two domains is established (Currle et al., 2005; Yoshida et al., 2006; Louvi et al., 2007; Subramanian and Tole, 2009).

Boundary-localised organisers employ certain key mechanisms for their maintenance. Many have been demonstrated to show lineage restriction, which may be important in maintaining the organiser domain as a sharp, straight line (Fraser et al., 1990; Irvine and Rauskolb, 2001; Larsen et al., 2001; Zervas et al., 2004; Langenberg and Brand, 2005; Jimenez-Guri et al., 2010). Other mechanisms that are also widely employed to maintain neural boundary-localised organisers include Notch signalling across the boundary and the use of Hes transcription factors, which will be discussed below.

5.2.1 Activated Notch signalling

Activation of Notch signalling has been shown to be important for the formation and maintenance of a number of developmental boundary-localised organisers, not just within the developing vertebrate CNS. The classic example of this is the Drosophila wing where a stripe of Notch activation is required for the formation or maintenance of the dorsoventral boundary of the wing imaginal disc (Rulifson and Blair, 1995). The notch receptor itself shows widespread expression within the wing imaginal disc (Fehon et al., 1991), but a stripe of Notch activation at the border is brought about by the localised expression of the Notch ligands, delta and serrate, and the modulator of Notch signalling, fringe. delta, expressed
mainly in the ventral compartment, activates Notch signalling in dorsal boundary cells while *serrate*, which is only expressed in the dorsal compartment, activates Notch signalling in ventral boundary cells (Diaz-Benjumea and Cohen, 1995; Doherty et al., 1996). This activation of Notch signalling is restricted to the dorsoventral boundary by the action of *fringe*, which is also expressed in the dorsal compartment and modulates the signalling efficiency of the Notch receptor causing the cell-autonomous inhibition of Serrate – Notch signalling, but potentiation of Delta-Notch signalling (Figure 5-1 A) (Fleming et al., 1997; Panin et al., 1997).

Strikingly similar situations have also been described for the midbrain-hindbrain boundary (MHB) in the chick and the zebrafish rhombomere boundaries. At the chick MHB *serrate1* and activated Notch signalling are necessary and sufficient to determine the positioning of formation of the midbrain – hindbrain boundary, as assessed by its nascent signalling molecules (*wnt1* and *fgf8*) (Tossell et al., 2011). *serrate1* is expressed both anterior and posterior to the MHB, although it is excluded from the isthmic constriction itself and rhombomere 1. *lfng* (a homologue of Drosophila *fringe*) is expressed in the same domain as *serrate1* and is also sufficient to re-define the position of MHB formation (Tossell et al., 2011). The expression of *delta1* differs from that of *serrate1* in that it is upregulated posterior to the MHB in rhombomere 1, although its specific role in MHB formation has not yet been investigated (Figure 5-1 B) (Tossell et al., 2011).

Delta-Notch signalling is required for the maintenance of the zebrafish rhombomere boundaries, as assessed by the expression of various boundary-marker genes, including the signalling molecule *wnt1* (Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004). *rfng* (another homolog of Drosophila *fringe*) is expressed by rhombomere boundary cells and is required for *wnt1* expression in the boundary cells (Cheng et al., 2004). The zebrafish *delta* homologs, *deltaA*, *deltaB* and *deltaD* are expressed in transverse stripes flanking rhombomere boundaries and thus mediate the activation of Notch signalling at the rhombomere boundaries (Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004). Thus the action of *rfng* in zebrafish may differ from the action of *fringe* and *lfng* in Drosophila and chick respectively, as it shows complementary rather than coincident expression with the expression of Notch ligands. Therefore *rfng* may act to potentiate Delta-mediated Notch signalling, rather than act to restrict the domain of Notch activation to boundaries (Figure 5-1 C).

The floor plate is an organiser present at the ventral midline of the developing CNS. Although it does not strictly fit into the boundary-localised organiser model as it is a boundary between molecularly indistinguishable compartments, it is another example of an organiser that requires Notch signalling for its maintenance (Bingham et al., 2003; le Roux et
al., 2003). Loss of Notch signalling resulted in ectopic neurogenesis of the floor plate in both zebrafish and chick (Bingham et al., 2003; le Roux et al., 2003).

In this thesis I determined that delta1 expression in the roof plate epithelium can convert roof plate epithelium cells to a roof plate boundary cell fate, as determined by the expression of gdf7, chairy2 and elevated cyp26C1 expression. This is likely to reflect an in vivo mechanism of maintenance of the roof plate boundary whereby delta1, expressed in the hindbrain neuroepithelium, signals via notch2, expressed in the roof plate, to activate notch signalling and maintain the identity of the roof plate boundary-organiser (Figure 5-1 D). In similarity with the dorsoventral boundary of the Drosophila wing imaginal disc and the midbrain-hindbrain boundary of the chick, Notch activation is sufficient to re-specify compartment cells as boundary cells (Kim et al., 1995; Doherty et al., 1996; Fleming et al., 1997; Tossell et al., 2011). Interestingly, this is not the case for zebrafish rhombomere boundaries. Notch activation was not sufficient to re-specify rhombomere compartment cells as rhombomere boundary cells implying that other mechanisms might be involved in their formation (Cheng et al., 2004). One difference between the above examples and the chick roof plate boundary is that, for the above examples, the Notch ligands are expressed on both sides of the boundary, activating Notch signalling in boundary cells immediately adjacent to the boundary (Doherty et al., 1996; Cheng et al., 2004; Tossell et al., 2011). In contrast, signalling to induce gdf7-expression appears to be unidirectional as the recombination of roof plate epithelium and hindbrain neuroepithelium only induces gdf7 expression in roof plate epithelium-derived cells. Further, the Notch ligands, delta1 and serrate1 were only expressed on the neuroepithelial side of the roof plate boundary, although the expression of other Notch ligands such as serrate2 has not yet been assessed (Figure 5-1).

In Drosophila a boundary between fringe-expressing and non-expressing cells positions the dorsoventral boundary of the wing imaginal disc (Irvine and Wieschaus, 1994). In chick, boundaries between lfng-expressing and non-expressing cells regulate the formation of the ZLI and the MHB, and boundaries between rfng-expressing and non-expressing cells regulate the formation of the apical ectodermal ridge of the limb bud (Laufer et al., 1997; Rodriguez-Esteban et al., 1997; Zeltser et al., 2001). Studies in this thesis show that the roof plate boundary is also located at the boundary between lfng-expressing and non-expressing cells. Whether lfng plays a role in the restriction of Notch activation to the gdf7-domain, as fringe does in Drosophila (Panin et al., 1997), remains to be determined. In Drosophila, fringe has been shown to potentiate Delta – Notch signalling, while inhibiting Serrate – Notch signalling, however in chick somitogenesis, Lfng inhibits Delta – Notch signalling (Dale et al., 2003). Thus the role of fringe and its homologues is species dependent. Its action in vertebrates is also context-dependent, as it has been shown that Lfng has different...
Figure 5-1 Schematic diagrams of Notch activation at boundary-localised organisers

(A) and (B) modified from (Tossell et al., 2011).

(A) Notch is activated (N*) at the dorsoventral boundary of the Drosophila wing imaginal disc by the concerted actions of Serrate (Ser) and Delta (Dl). Ser activates Notch in ventral boundary cells and Dl activates Notch in dorsal boundary cells. Fringe (Fng) is only expressed in the dorsal compartment and restricts Notch activation to the boundary by inhibiting activation of Notch by Ser but potentiating the activation of Notch by Dl. Notch activation induces Wingless (Wg) expression. Wg patterns the wing primordium. D, dorsal; V, ventral.

(B) Model of signalling at the chick midbrain-hindbrain boundary (MHB). Serrate1 (Ser1) and Lfng are expressed abutting the anterior (A) border of the MHB. Ser1 is proposed to activate Notch signalling (N*) at the MHB, which is sufficient to induce Wnt1 expression and re-position Fgf8 expression. Delta1 (Dl1) is expressed posterior (P) to the MHB so may contribute to the positioning of the stripe of Notch activation.

(C) At zebrafish rhombomere boundaries, DeltaA, DeltaB and DeltaD (DIA/ B/ D) are expressed adjacent to the boundaries. Delta-Notch signalling is required to activate Notch (N*) at boundaries and maintain expression of Rfng and Wnt1. Rfng is also required for boundary maintenance. Wnt signals are required to organise neurogenesis within rhombomeres.

(D) Model of chick hindbrain roof plate boundary maintenance. Delta1 (Dl1) is expressed in the hindbrain neuroepithelium (HbNe) and signals to the roof plate to activate Notch (N*) at the roof plate boundary and maintain gdf7 and high-level cyp26C1 and chairy2 expression. Serrate1 and Lfng are also expressed in the HbNe but their roles have not yet been determined. cHairy2 function is required to maintain the roof plate boundary. The roof plate boundary signals to the HbNe and the RPE.
effects depending on which Notch receptor Delta1 and Jagged1 (the mouse homolog of Serrate1) are signalling through in mouse (Hicks et al., 2000). Therefore the specific role of Lfng at the chick roof plate boundary must be investigated in terms of its effects on Delta and Serrate signalling through the Notch2 receptor.

Studies of the chick hindbrain roof plate boundary therefore provide further evidence that activated Notch signalling is a highly conserved mechanism involved in the formation or maintenance of boundary-localised organisers within epithelia. It will be interesting to see if it is also involved in the formation or maintenance of other potential boundary-localised organisers, such as the telencephalic cortical hem – choroid plexus epithelium boundary.

5.2.2 Hes transcription factors

The Hes family of transcription factors has been shown to be important for the formation or maintenance of neural organisers in mouse and in zebrafish. Baek et al. (2006) showed that in \( \text{hes}1;\text{hes}3;\text{hes}5 \) triple-null mice the midbrain-hindbrain boundary, ZLI, spinal cord roof plate and floor plate are not formed properly, as assessed by the expression of their nascent signalling molecules (\( \text{wnt}1, \text{fgf}8 \) and \( \text{shh} \)). The loss of these organisers is coincident with ectopic neurogenesis within the organiser domains, although Baek et al. (2006) do not establish whether the \( \text{hes} \) transcription factors are required for the formation or maintenance of the organisers. However, Hirata et al. (2001) show that \( \text{hes}1 \) and \( \text{hes}3 \) are specifically required for the maintenance of the midbrain-hindbrain boundary in mice, and that the loss of this organiser also coincides with ectopic neurogenesis.

In zebrafish the hairy/ enhancer of split related genes \( \text{her}5 \) and \( \text{him} \) have been shown to be required for the maintenance of the MHB, preventing the expression of proneural genes and ectopic neurogenesis there (Geling et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005). In similarity with the functions of \( \text{hes}1 \) and \( \text{hes}3 \) at the mouse MHB, \( \text{him} \) and \( \text{her}5 \) are not required for the initial specification of the MHB, as determined by the expression of MHB markers such as \( \text{wnt}1 \) and \( \text{fgf}8 \) (Geling et al., 2003; Ninkovic et al., 2005).

In this thesis I have established that the chick \( \text{hes}1 \) orthologues, \( \text{chairy}1 \) and \( \text{chairy}2 \) are upregulated at the hindbrain roof plate boundary from E4 – E6 and that the correct level of \( \text{chairy}2 \) expression is required for the maintenance of the \( \text{gdf}7 \)-positive roof plate boundary-organiser (as assessed by the loss of expression of \( \text{cath}1 \) in the adjacent neuroepithelium and \( \text{cyp}26\text{C}1 \) and \( \text{ttr} \) in the adjacent roof plate epithelium) (Figure 5-1 D). \( \text{chairy}1 \) may also play a role in the maintenance of this boundary, although its expression was not induced in the roof plate epithelium at an experimental hindbrain roof plate epithelium – neuroepithelium boundary, so its role was not investigated. In zebrafish, the overexpression of \( \text{her}5 \) is not sufficient to expand the MHB domain (Geling et al., 2003). Similarly, the overexpression of
chairy2 across the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary did not expand the gdf7-positive domain, implying that it is not sufficient to induce ectopic gdf7-positive roof plate boundary cells. This is in contrast with the result of overexpression of hes1 in the mouse telencephalon, which results in reduced neurogenesis and cell proliferation, characteristic properties of boundary-localised organisers (Baek et al., 2006). However Baek et al. (2006) did not demonstrate the complete conversion of compartment cells to boundary cells by the expression of boundary cell markers. Therefore it is likely that hes genes do not drive the initial formation of boundary-localised organisers but instead are only required for their maintenance.

The above studies show that the loss of hes genes at boundaries coincides with ectopic expression of neighbouring neurogenic genes within boundary regions (Geling et al., 2003; Geling et al., 2004; Ninkovic et al., 2005; Baek et al., 2006). The ectopic expression of the proneural gene cath1 was never observed in the gdf7-domain following perturbation of cHairy2 function, therefore ectopic neurogenesis is not the cause of the loss of this organiser. Instead, the downregulation of gdf7 is likely to be due, at least in part, to cell death. An explanation for the disparity between previous studies and this study may be that in previous studies, Hes activity was removed from the outset, whereas here Hes function was perturbed after boundary formation. Early Hes activity during boundary formation or immediately afterwards may thus be required to prevent ectopic neurogenesis within the boundary, whereas later Hes activity may be required to maintain cells in an organiser-like state and prevent their ectopic cell death.

Hes genes are well known downstream effectors of Notch signalling (Ohtsuka et al., 1999; Kageyama et al., 2007), however the inhibition of proneural gene expression at the MHB by her5 in zebrafish has been shown to be Notch-independent (Geling et al., 2004). Here I demonstrate that chairy2 is induced by activated Notch signalling in the roof plate epithelium, and is therefore likely to be required downstream of Notch signalling for the maintenance of the gdf7-positive roof plate boundary. This suggests that the requirement for hes genes for the formation or maintenance of the ZLI, MHB and spinal cord roof plate and floor plate in the mouse, described by Baek et al. (2006), might also be downstream of Notch signalling. It will be interesting to see if other boundary-localised organisers such as the zebrafish rhombomere boundaries that have been shown to require Notch signalling for their maintenance (Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004) also require downstream hes transcription factors.

In this thesis I also documented how chairy2 shows upregulated expression at the floor plate boundaries from E4 – E6 in chick. This raises the possibility that the organiser properties of
the floor plate are also localised to its boundaries and therefore the floor plate might fit with the boundary-localisation model for organisers where organisers are localised at boundaries between molecularly-distinguishable compartments. Indeed Notch signalling has already been shown to be required for the maintenance of the floor plate in chick and in zebrafish (Bingham et al., 2003; le Roux et al., 2003), however whether this represents an interaction between a medial floor plate domain and the neuroepithelium adjacent to the floor plate, or whether it represents signalling from the ventral neuroepithelial to the entire floor plate remains to be determined.

5.2.3 Tissue interactions – other signalling pathways?

Tissue interactions between compartment tissues have been shown to induce the formation of boundaries at their interface, such as the rhombomere boundaries, the ZLI and the MHB (Guthrie and Lumsden, 1991; Heyman et al., 1995; Irving and Mason, 1999; Guinazu et al., 2007). Activated Notch signalling has been shown to be upstream of the positioning of the MHB in ovo in chick and it has been suggested that Notch signalling might also mediate the formation of the ZLI at the interface between the pre-thalamus and the thalamus, due to the requirement for the Notch signalling modulator lfng (Zeltser et al., 2001; Tossell et al., 2011). Indeed the Notch ligands, delta1 and serrate1 are expressed abutting the prospective ZLI territory, however a role for Delta-Notch or Serrate-Notch interactions in the formation of the ZLI has not been formally tested (Zeltser et al., 2001). However, in the Drosophila wing imaginal disc it has been shown that fringe can influence dorsoventral compartmentalisation of cells in an environment of constitutively active Notch signalling (Rauskolb et al., 1999). Therefore fringe and its homologues may also be involved in Notch-independent pathways to influence boundary formation.

Notch signalling is required for the maintenance of rhombomere boundaries in zebrafish but is not sufficient to induce their formation (Cheng et al., 2004; Riley et al., 2004). Instead, interactions between Eph receptors and ephrin ligands, which are expressed in a complementary pattern in odd and even-numbered rhombomeres (Xu and Wilkinson, 1997), have been shown to mediate the cell sorting that occurs between odd and even-numbered rhombomeres (Guthrie et al., 1993; Wizenmann and Lumsden, 1997; Mellitzer et al., 1999; Xu et al., 1999), and the loss or disruption of EphA4 function results in a disruption of rhombomere boundaries (Xu et al., 1995; Cooke et al., 2005). These studies indicate that a signalling pathway other than the Notch signalling pathway is involved in the formation of this boundary-organiser, although Eph-ephrin signalling has not yet been shown to be sufficient to induce boundary formation.
In my studies of the regeneration of the roof plate boundary-organiser at the interface between hindbrain roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium, it was seen that \textit{gdf7} expression could be induced by an interaction between the roof plate epithelium and any part of the hindbrain neuroepithelium, along the dorsoventral axis, including the floor plate. Ligand-driven Notch signalling robustly induces \textit{gdf7} in the roof plate epithelium, however neither \textit{delta1} nor \textit{serrate1} are expressed by the floor plate at these stages (this study and Myat et al. (1996)). This implies that either other Notch ligands such as \textit{serrate2} are expressed in the floor plate, or a signalling pathway other than the Notch signalling pathway, such as the Eph-ephrin pathway, is also involved in the induction and maintenance of the \textit{gdf7}-positive organiser. It will be interesting to see if this is indeed the case.

5.2.4 Lineage restriction

As mentioned above, the ZLI, MHB and rhombomere boundaries have all been shown to demonstrate lineage restriction (Fraser et al., 1990; Irvine and Rauskolb, 2001; Larsen et al., 2001; Zervas et al., 2004; Langenberg and Brand, 2005; Jimenez-Guri et al., 2010). At the roof plate – rhombic lip interface, genetic fate maps in mouse demonstrate that \textit{math1}-positive progenitors only ever give rise to neurons, while \textit{gdf7}-positive progenitors only contribute to the roof plate and choroid plexus epithelium (Landsberg et al., 2005; Machold and Fishell, 2005; Wang et al., 2005; Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). Therefore a molecular lineage restriction boundary exists at this interface. However, whether a \textit{math1}-negative, \textit{gdf7}-negative progenitor cell with the potential to give rise to either neurons or roof plate exists at this interface has not yet been tested. Evidence for this idea comes from evidence of fate switches between the two lineages when \textit{lmx1a} or \textit{math1} is lost. \textit{Lmx1a} is expressed predominantly in the hindbrain roof plate epithelium and roof plate boundary, but is also expressed in the rhombic lip in both Math1-positive and -negative cells (Chizhikov et al., 2010). In \textit{lmx1a} -/- mice there is a loss of choroid plexus epithelial cells and a compensatory ectopic contribution of roof plate cells (cells derived from \textit{gdf7}-positive progenitors) to the deep cerebellar nuclei, which normally derive from the Math1-positive rhombic lip (Machold and Fishell, 2005; Wang et al., 2005; Chizhikov et al., 2010). Conversely, in \textit{math1} null mice, cells that have lost functional Math1 ectopically contribute to the choroid plexus epithelium (Rose et al., 2009a). These results show that cells exist at the roof plate – rhombic lip interface that have the potential to become both choroid plexus epithelium or rhombic lip- derived neurons, implying that there is no physical lineage restriction at the roof plate – rhombic lip interface. Single-cell labelling experiments will enable the investigation of whether a single progenitor gives rise to neurons and non-neuronal roof plate/ choroid plexus epithelium in the wild-type situation.
In parallel with the above, a fate switch between neural and non-neuronal cells at the dorsal telencephalic midline has been shown to be regulated by *hes* genes. At the telencephalic dorsal midline the cortical hem, which gives rise to Cajal-Retzius neurons, is situated adjacent to the non-neuronal choroid plexus epithelium (Takiguchi-Hayashi et al., 2004; Yoshida et al., 2006; Imayoshi et al., 2008) In mice where *hes1*, *hes3* and *hes5* are inactivated in the dorsal telencephalon there is a loss of choroid plexus epithelium and a compensatory increase in Cajal-Retzius cell formation (Imayoshi et al., 2008). This implies that the telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium – cortical hem boundary is also not a strict lineage restriction boundary. Therefore both the hindbrain and telencephalic roof plate – neuroepithelium boundaries are likely to be maintained by genetic mechanisms rather than physical boundaries to cells mixing.

5.2.5 Roof plate organiser formation

My studies show that tissue interactions, Notch signalling and Hes transcription factors are involved in the maintenance of an established *gdf7*-positive organiser in the hindbrain. This leads to a number of questions about how the *gdf7*-positive boundary is established in the first place.

Notch signalling has been shown to be upstream of the formation of the MHB in chick, marked by the expression of *fgf8*, *wnt1* and *fgf3* (Tossell et al., 2011). The expression of *delta1* in the roof plate epithelium is sufficient to induce roof plate boundary marker expression at E5 *in ovo*. Therefore it would be interesting to see if Notch signalling is required for the initial formation of the *gdf7*-positive roof plate boundary that is established at E3. As mentioned above, the overexpression of *chairy2* at the roof plate epithelium – hindbrain neuroepithelium boundary was not sufficient to induce an expansion of the roof plate boundary domain at E5, therefore it is likely that *chairy2* is not involved in the initial formation of the boundary but is involved in the maintenance of the roof plate boundary after its formation.

The hindbrain roof plate epithelium could represent an expanded version of the *gdf7*-negative domain present at the midline of the spinal cord roof plate, but this raises the question of how this *gdf7*-negative domain is specified. One could hypothesise that this *gdf7*-negative domain represents a piece of non-neural ectoderm inserted at the dorsal midline of the neural tube upon neurulation (similar to the proposed insertion of organiser/ node-derived mesendoderm into the neural plate to form the floor plate (Le Douarin and Halpern, 2000)). Perhaps markers of epidermal ectoderm could be used to assess any contribution of this tissue to the neural tube upon neurulation. It is important to note that in zebrafish and regions of the posterior spinal cord, neural tube formation occurs via cavitation of a solid rod...
of tissue (Lowery and Sive, 2004). Therefore mechanisms other than the one proposed above must come into play to specify a midline roof plate domain in these regions.

5.2.6 Beyond the CNS – a generalised model for organisers?

The striking conservation of the use of tissue interactions, Notch signalling and Hes transcription factors for the maintenance of not only neural organisers, but other epithelial organisers such as the apical ectodermal ridge of the vertebrate limb bud or the dorsoventral boundary of the Drosophila wing imaginal disc raises the possibility that this set of mechanisms represents a conserved cassette that might be employed by other localised organisers in embryonic development. Perhaps all secondary organisers are localised to boundaries between molecularly distinguishable compartments of tissue as this reflects their requirement for tissue interactions between adjacent compartments for their maintenance.

In striking homology with the hindbrain roof plate boundary, \textit{gdf5/6/7} are expressed at sites of joint formation in the developing mammalian skeleton (Storm and Kingsley, 1996; Francis-West et al., 1999; Settle et al., 2003) and \textit{math1} expression marks epiphyseal chondrocytes that are located adjacent to joint interzones and are destined to become articular chondrocytes (Ben-Arie et al., 2000; Pacifici et al., 2000). \textit{gdf5} is the most extensively expressed member of the \textit{gdf5/6/7} group, being expressed in every developing joint of the limbs of mouse embryos, and is therefore the best studied (Storm and Kingsley, 1996). The overexpression of Gdf5 causes cartilaginous overgrowth and inhibits joint formation in the developing chick and mouse limbs (Francis-West et al., 1999; Merino et al., 1999; Storm and Kingsley, 1999). The effect of Gdf5 on cartilaginous growth is thought to occur via both recruitment of mesenchymal cells to the chondrocyte lineage at early stages and stimulation of epiphyseal chondrocyte proliferation and accelerated differentiation at later stages (Francis-West et al., 1999; Tsumaki et al., 1999). Conversely, loss of \textit{gdf5} caused a reduction in cartilage markers, but a spreading of joint markers in the digit region of mice, reminiscent of the reported role of \textit{wnt1} in the restriction of boundary-marker expression at the zebrafish rhombomere boundaries (Storm and Kingsley, 1999; Amoyel et al., 2005).

In Drosophila, as in the dorsoventral boundary of the wing imaginal disc, activated Notch signalling demarcates boundaries between future leg segments (de Celis et al., 1998). Activated Notch signalling is further necessary and sufficient for the formation of joints between leg segments (de Celis et al., 1998). The loss of joints by the clonal inhibition of Notch signalling was autonomous, however there was also a non-autonomous effect on the growth of leg segments. Therefore, analogous to the situation in the Drosophila wing, the formation of leg segment boundaries was required to direct the growth of the adjacent leg segments (Díaz-Benjumea and Cohen, 1995; Kim et al., 1995; de Celis and Bray, 1997). In
contrast however, Delta and Serrate do not activate Notch signalling from either side of the boundary. Rather Notch signalling activation is asymmetric with Delta and Serrate expressed in a stripes of cells adjacent and proximal to the ring of cells showing activated Notch signalling (Diaz-Benjumea and Cohen, 1995; Doherty et al., 1996; de Celis et al., 1998; Bishop et al., 1999). These ligands are required in composite for correct leg segmentation (Parody and Muskavitch, 1993; de Celis et al., 1998; Bishop et al., 1999).

Notch receptors and ligands show restricted domains of expression in developing joint regions of the avian limb (Williams et al., 2009). However, despite its conserved role in specifying boundary cells and its role in segmentation of Drosophila legs, the role of activated Notch signalling in the segmentation of vertebrate skeletal elements has not yet been investigated. Given my findings that Delta-mediated activation of Notch signalling lies upstream of \textit{gdf7} expression at the hindbrain roof plate boundary of chick embryos, it would be interesting to see if Notch signalling is involved in the localisation of expression of \textit{gdf5/6/7} at future skeletal joint locations in chick and mice. Analogous to the situation in the hindbrain, these domains of \textit{gdf5/6/7} expression might then signal to adjacent \textit{math1}-expressing epiphyseal chondrocytes to direct their proliferation or differentiation.

5.3 Choroid plexus development

The choroid plexuses are a series of interfaces that form at the roof of the lateral, third and fourth ventricles of the vertebrate brain, forming part of the blood-brain barrier (Dziegielewksa et al., 2001). They are responsible for the secretion of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and thus the regulation of the internal environment of the brain during embryogenesis and in the adult (Redzic et al., 2005). Despite their vital function little is currently known about how the development of the choroid plexuses is coordinated.

5.3.1 Choroid plexus epithelium development

The choroid plexus is comprised of two components; the choroid plexus epithelium and the heavily vascularised choroidal stroma. The choroid plexus epithelium of the fourth ventricle mouse choroid plexus has been shown to derive mostly, if not completely from \textit{gdf7}-positive progenitors (Currle et al., 2005; Landsberg et al., 2005; Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). Mitotic events in the choroid plexus epithelium are rare (Knudsen, 1964; Sturrock, 1979; Hunter and Dymecki, 2007), therefore choroid plexus epithelium cells are likely to differentiate directly from roof plate epithelium cells, which in turn are derived from progenitors situated at the \textit{wnt1}-positive, \textit{gdf7}-positive roof plate boundary (Awatramani et al., 2003; Currle et al., 2005; Landsberg et al., 2005; Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). However, from E12.5 throughout the rest of development in mice, a lateral roof plate progenitor domain, which includes the
roof plate boundary, can give rise to choroid plexus epithelium directly (Hunter and Dymecki, 2007; Huang et al., 2009). Whether this proliferative domain also includes an equivalent of the lateral ttr-negative, cyp26C1-positive domain of E4 chick embryos, remains to be determined. In the telencephalon, gdf7-positive progenitors only give rise to the anterior portion of the choroid plexus epithelium, however the posterior portion requires non-autonomous signals from the anterior portion for its formation (Currle et al., 2005). This highlights a non-autonomous patterning mechanism required for the formation of choroid plexus epithelium.

Other than the above lineage studies, little work has been done to identify the mechanisms that induce choroid plexus differentiation from roof plate epithelium. It has been suggested that insulin-like growth factor II, which is expressed in the overlying mesenchyme prior to and during choroid plexus morphogenesis, might play a role (Cavallaro et al., 1993). However, Wilting and Christ (1989) showed that the prospective telencephalic choroidal stroma of chick embryos could not induce the differentiation of choroid plexus epithelium from grafted non-choroid plexus-forming dorsal neuroepithelium of quail embryos. In contrast, prospective choroid plexus epithelium from quail embryos both differentiated into choroid plexus epithelium and induced the differentiation of choroid plexus-typical capillaries from non-choroid plexus-forming mesenchyme. These experiments highlighted the early specification of choroid plexus epithelial cells (at E2 – 3) and the inability of choroidal stroma to induce the differentiation of choroid plexus epithelium. Studies in mice have also shown that the choroid plexus epithelium is specified this early (at E8.5, equivalent to E2 in chick) (Thomas and Dziadek, 1993). These studies, together with the results of the lineage studies in mice that show that most, if not all, of the hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium is derived from gdf7-positive progenitors, might lead one to conclude that all progeny of gdf7-expressing cells are fated to give rise to choroid plexus epithelium and do not require inductive signals. However, in the mouse telencephalon this is not the case (Currle et al., 2005), and in this thesis I have demonstrated that inductive signals from the roof plate boundary are required for hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium development.

In my studies I found that signals from the roof plate boundaries of the fourth ventricle are required for the non-autonomous induction or maintenance of choroid plexus epithelium differentiation (Figure 4-18). The expansion of the roof plate boundary via activation of Notch signalling in the roof plate epithelium did not non-autonomously alter the pattern of choroid plexus epithelium differentiation, therefore I have not demonstrated that the roof plate boundary is sufficient to induce differentiation of the choroid plexus epithelium. Embryos were manipulated at E3 and incubated until E5. Choroid plexus epithelium differentiation begins at E4, however the above manipulations first required the induction of
roof plate boundary by delta1-mediated Notch activation in the roof plate epithelium, and a subsequent effect of this induced boundary on adjacent roof plate epithelial cells. Therefore manipulations at E3 may have been too late to have any inductive effects on choroid plexus epithelium differentiation. Perhaps earlier manipulations or assessment of embryos at a later time point would show that choroid plexus epithelial cells are induced by an expanded roof plate boundary.

Although no induction of choroid plexus epithelial cells by an ectopic roof plate boundary was seen, a loss of choroid plexus epithelial cells adjacent to an expanded roof plate boundary domain was seen, within the domain of Notch activation. This could be a result of Notch activation in the roof plate epithelium directly causing downregulation of ttr expression, although this is unlikely as the expression of the constitutively active Notch1-intracellular domain (ICD) under the control of the gdf7 locus in mouse causes a massive expansion of ttr-positive choroid plexus epithelium (Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). Instead a different model is favoured whereby signals from the expanded roof plate boundary signal to the immediately adjacent roof plate epithelium to inhibit ttr expression (Figure 4-18). A ttr-negative but cyp26C1-positive domain adjacent to the roof plate boundary exists in the E4 wild-type chick embryo. What might be the function of this lateral ttr-negative domain? In mouse embryos, a proliferative, shh-responsive domain at the lateral edges of the choroid plexus epithelium is required to contribute to the growth of the choroid plexus epithelium from E12.5 throughout development (Huang et al., 2009). Therefore the lateral ttr-negative domain in chick might represent a reserved, undifferentiated pool that will be required later to proliferate and contribute directly to choroid plexus epithelium growth. Further work is required to determine if a shh-responsive, lateral, proliferative domain does indeed exist in chick embryos and if it is derived from the cyp26C1-positive, ttr-negative domain present at E4.

My finding that ligand-driven Notch signalling in the roof plate epithelium induces roof plate boundary fate offers new insights into the phenotype of gdf7::cre; R26::stop-notch1-ICD mice (Hunter and Dymecki, 2007). In these mice an expanded choroid plexus epithelium was largely ttr-positive at postnatal day 7 (P7) and at P0 only 20% of choroid plexus epithelium cells were proliferative. Therefore the forced expression of notch1-ICD in gdf7-positive progenitors did not simply result in symmetric proliferative cell divisions. In light of my findings one might hypothesise that expression of notch1-ICD induced a roof plate boundary fate, which is part of the shh-responsive proliferative domain that gives rise to differentiated choroid plexus epithelial cells through development (Huang et al., 2009). It would be interesting to see if the phenotype of gdf7::cre; R26::stop-notch1-ICD mice is augmented by
activated shh signalling, such as by the expression of constitutively active Smoothened, an essential component of Hedgehog signalling (Huang et al., 2009).

Whether Notch signalling is involved in the maintenance of a hindbrain roof plate boundary that is required for the induction or maintenance of choroid plexus epithelium in other vertebrates remains to be determined. However, clues come from studies of zebrafish choroid plexus development that show that global inhibition of Delta—Notch signalling results in malformations of the fourth ventricle choroid plexus epithelium, as it exceeds its anteroposterior and mediolateral bounds (Bill et al., 2008; Garcia-Lecea et al., 2008). Whether this was an autonomous or non-autonomous role of Notch signalling, however, remains to be determined.

The presence of an organiser at the boundary between roof plate epithelium and neuroepithelium at the hindbrain that is required for choroid plexus epithelium development raises the possibility that an equivalent boundary-organiser also exists at other axial regions where choroid plexus develops; at the telencephalic and diencephalic roof plates. Support for an organiser in the cortical hem that directs the development of the choroid plexus came from the genetic loss of function of gli3 in the extra-toes mouse mutant. gli3 encodes a transcriptional regulator of wnt gene expression and is expressed in the cortical neuroepithelium including the cortical hem, but not the developing choroid plexus epithelium (Grove et al., 1998). In extra-toes mice the cortical hem expression of wnt2b, wnt3a, and wnt5a was lost and the choroid plexus epithelium, as assessed by ttr expression did not form. This suggested a non-autonomous role of cortical-hem derived wnts for the specification of the choroid plexus epithelium. However cortical hem progenitors contribute to the choroid plexus epithelium, implying that loss of gli3 function could have had an autonomous effect on choroid plexus epithelial cell differentiation (Yoshida et al., 2006; Louvi et al., 2007). Focal electroporation, as utilised in my studies of the hindbrain roof plate boundary-organiser, would help to determine if signalling molecules from the cortical hem are required non-autonomously to direct the differentiation of telencephalic choroid plexus epithelial cells.

5.3.2 Candidates for the signals derived from the roof plate boundary

What are the molecular signals derived from the roof plate boundary that signal to the roof plate epithelium to induce or maintain choroid plexus epithelium differentiation? One candidate group of signalling molecules are the BMP signals, including Gdf7 itself, as BMP signalling is known to be specifically required for the development of the telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium (Hebert et al., 2002). However, in some embryos where chairy2ΔWRPW or full length chairy2 was overexpressed at the rhombic lip – roof plate
boundary, *ttr* expression was lost non-autonomously but there was no autonomous downregulation of *gdf7* expression. This suggests that the expression of signals other than Gdf7 were perturbed by the overexpression of full length or truncated *chairy2*, and that these signals are required for *ttr* expression in the roof plate epithelium.

Another good candidate molecule is Wnt1 as it is not expressed in the roof plate epithelium but is expressed highly in the roof plate boundary of both mouse and chick (Landsberg et al., 2005). Wnt/β-catenin signalling has been shown to be necessary for the dorsoventral patterning of the chick spinal cord (Alvarez-Medina et al., 2008). However, a Wnt/β-catenin-responsive reporter mouse and the expression of *axin2*, a Wnt/β-catenin signalling target gene, show that the E12.5 and E14.5 choroid plexus epithelium is not responsive to Wnt/β-catenin signalling (Selvadurai and Mason, 2011), although these ages are after the initial differentiation of choroid plexus epithelium so these results do not preclude an earlier role for Wnt/β-catenin signalling in induction of choroid plexus epithelium differentiation.

Lastly, retinoic acid is another good candidate molecule as *cyp26C1*, expressed in the roof plate epithelium and choroid plexus epithelium, encodes a retinoic acid catabolising enzyme whose expression in the neuroepithelium is dependent on retinoic acid signalling (Reijntjes et al., 2004). Additionally the cytochrome p450 retinoic acid-synthesising enzyme, *cyp1b1*, shows localised expression at the roof plate boundary at E5 (Wilson et al., 2007), although it and another retinoic acid synthesising enzyme, *raldh2*, are also expressed in the mesenchyme overlying the roof plate so retinoic acid signals may not specifically derive from the roof plate boundary. Retinoic acid is derived from vitamin A and vitamin A-deficiency studies in mice show that a lack of retinoic acid results in hydrocephalus and poorly developed choroid plexuses, further supporting a role for retinoic acid in choroid plexus development (see discussion in Ruberte et al. (1993)).

### 5.3.3 Choroidal blood vessel development

As mentioned above, the prospective telencephalic choroid plexus epithelium can induce the differentiation of organ-typical capillaries from the body-wall mesenchyme of chick embryos (Wilting and Christ, 1989). The nature of this signal has not yet been identified, however in mice it has been shown that *shh* expressed in the choroid plexus epithelium is required for vascular outgrowth in the hindbrain choroid plexus (Nielsen and Dymecki, 2010). However *shh* was not required for the correct specification of organ-typical fenestrated capillaries. Therefore the mechanism of specification of hindbrain choroid plexus blood vessel development remains elusive.

A microarray study to compare genes expressed at the roof plate boundary/ rhombic lip domain in comparison with more ventral neuroepithelium in E4 and E6 chick hindbrains
indicates that a number of pro- and anti-angiogenic factors are expressed at the roof plate boundary/ rhombic lip at these time points (Wilson, Chambers and Wingate, unpublished). It will be interesting to determine whether pro- and anti-angiogenic factors from the roof plate boundary are involved in the induction or patterning of choroid plexus blood vessel development.

5.3.4 Role of the roof plate boundary-organiser and the integrated coordination of choroid plexus and neural development

Aside from its role in the physical protection of the developing brain, CSF produced by the choroid plexuses has a number of distinct roles in the coordination of neural development (Redzic et al., 2005). The embryonic and postnatal mammalian fourth ventricle choroid plexus expresses high levels of the retinoic acid synthesising enzyme Raldh2, and retinoic acid secreted by the fourth ventricle choroid plexus has been shown to induce neurite outgrowth of cerebellar explant cultures (Yamamoto et al., 1996). This effect was age-dependent and correlated with choroid plexus Raldh2 activity at different ages. Further, excess retinoic acid has been shown to have potent teratogenic effects on the development of the cerebellum, supporting a role for choroid plexus-derived retinoic acid in the coordination of cerebellum development (McCaffery et al., 2003). More recently it has been shown that, Shh present in the CSF, most likely secreted by the hindbrain choroid plexus epithelium, regulates proliferation of cerebellar radial glial cells and production of GABAergic neuronal progenitors (Huang et al., 2010). Therefore CSF-derived retinoic acid and Shh have distinct roles in the development of the cerebellum, with retinoic acid secretion highlighting the role of a dynamically regulated signal present in the CSF.

Recently it has been shown that Igf2 present in the CSF, the source of which is most likely to be telencephalic choroid plexus, stimulates the proliferation of cerebral cortical progenitor cells in mice (Lehtinen et al., 2011). The stimulatory effect of CSF on cerebral cortical progenitor cell proliferation and survival was age-dependent and closely mimicked the temporal profile of CSF Igf2 concentration. Further, genetic loss of Igf2 or its receptor Igf1r significantly reduced CSF-stimulated cortical progenitor cell proliferation with genetic loss of Igf2 resulting in mice with smaller brains. These results demonstrated the importance of CSF-borne Igf2 for the stimulation of cortical progenitor cell proliferation, but did not rule out a role for other CSF-borne growth factors. Indeed the authors of this study identified that the CSF contained Wnt, Bmp and retinoic acid signalling capacity, which varied depending on the age of CSF sampled. Furthermore, a number of signalling molecules of the TGF-β superfamily, which includes proteins of the Bmp family, the FGF family and retinoic acid synthesising enzymes are expressed by the choroid plexus during development (Redzic et al.,
2005; Lehtinen et al., 2011). Future work will determine if these signalling molecules have any function in coordinating neuroepithelial cell proliferation, differentiation or survival either via a CSF route or via a paracrine route from the choroid plexus to the adjacent dorsal neuroepithelium.

In the forebrain, choroid plexus-expressed Slit2 is thought to contribute to the orientation of migration of cerebral cortical neurons and olfactory interneuron precursors via chemorepulsion (Hu, 1999; Nguyen-Ba-Charvet et al., 2004). This raises the possibility that the fourth ventricle choroid plexus might also be involved in axon guidance during neuronal network formation, although this has not yet been shown.

The above demonstrates that choroid plexus-derived factors have multiple roles in the dynamic coordination of neuroepithelial cell proliferation, survival and differentiation, and may also have a role in directing neuronal path-finding. Therefore it is imperative that the timing of development of neuroepithelium and the choroid plexus is well-coordinated. One method to achieve this coordination of development is the use of a single organiser or signal source to direct the development of both tissues simultaneously. The coordinated development of two tissues by a single organiser or signal is a feature of other developmental processes, such as the stimulation of growth of the choroid plexus epithelium and vasculature by choroid plexus epithelium-derived shh (Nielsen and Dymecki, 2010), the patterning of the adjacent thalamus and pre-thalamus by shh from the ZLI (Kiecker and Lumsden, 2004) or the patterning of the adjacent midbrain and rhombomere 1 by the MHB (Wassef and Joyner, 1997). The hindbrain roof plate boundary-organiser, which is required for development of both the dorsal neuroepithelium and the choroid plexus epithelium, is therefore another example of an organiser that directs the development of two separate, but functionally linked tissues. It will be interesting to see if shared boundary-organisers that simultaneously coordinate the development of the neuroepithelium and the choroid plexus at the lateral and third ventricles also exist.
5.4 Conclusions

This thesis presents the argument that organiser properties of the chicken hindbrain roof plate are localised to its boundaries. The chick roof plate boundary is characterised by gdf7 expression, but a comparable boundary is also likely to exist in mouse, being marked by high mRNA expression of gdf7, wnt1 and lmx1a. The roof plate organiser not only signals to the hindbrain neuroepithelium, but is also involved in patterning the development of the choroid plexus epithelium, which is derived from the roof plate epithelium. Thus I have established new insights into how the development of the choroid plexus is coordinated, a tissue whose development, until recently, has received little attention. A shared organiser that directs the development of both neuroepithelium and choroid plexus epithelium is a simple mechanism that ensures coordinated development of the two tissues.

The roof plate boundary is maintained by tissue interactions between the roof plate epithelium and the hindbrain neuroepithelium, which are molecularly mediated by Notch signalling. Downstream of Notch activation at the roof plate boundary, the hes transcription factor, chairy2 must be expressed at the correct level to mediate maintenance of the gdf7-positive organiser. The remarkable conservation of the localisation of organisers at boundaries and the use of tissue interactions between molecularly distinct tissue compartments, activated Notch signalling and Hes transcription factors for the maintenance of those boundary-localised organisers suggests a generalizable model for other organisers in the developing CNS, and indeed in other tissues such as the developing skeletal elements.
## Chapter 6 Materials and Methods

### 6.1 Common Solutions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Solution</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddH₂O</td>
<td>double-distilled H₂O. Autoclave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS</td>
<td>phosphate buffered saline (Oxoid). Autoclave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFA</td>
<td>4% paraformaldehyde (Sigma) in PBS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBTw</td>
<td>PBS with 0.1% Tween-20 (Sigma).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tris-HCL</td>
<td>Trizma base, minimum (Sigma) in ddH₂O. pH to desired pH with 2M HCl. Autoclave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20x SSC (pH 4.5)</td>
<td>3M NaCl (BDH), 0.3M sodium citrate (Fisher Scientific). pH using 5M citric acid. Autoclave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5x MAB pH7.5</td>
<td>500mM maleic acid (Sigma), 750mM NaCl (BDH). pH using NaOH pellets (BDH). Autoclave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MABT</td>
<td>1xMAB with 0.1% Tween-20 (Sigma).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10% BBR</td>
<td>Boehringer Blocking Reagent (Boehringer) dissolved in 1x MAB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detergent Mix</td>
<td>1% IGEPAL CA-630 (Sigma), 1% SDS (Sigma), 0.5% deoxycholate (Fluka), 50mM Tris-HCL (pH8), 1mM EDTA (Ambion), 150mM NaCl (BDH).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whole-mount hybridisation buffer</td>
<td>50% formamide (Sigma), 5x SSC (pH4.5), 2% SDS (Sigma), 2% BBR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solution X</td>
<td>50% formamide (Sigma), 2x SSC (pH4.5), 1% SDS (Sigma).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heat-inactivated sheep serum</td>
<td>Sheep Serum (Sigma) heated to 56°C for 30 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blocking solution</td>
<td>2% BBR, 20% heat-inactivated sheep serum in MABT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whole-mount pH 8 NTMT</td>
<td>100mM NaCl (BDH), 100mM Tris-HCL (pH8), 50mM MgCl₂ (BDH), 1% Tween-20 (Sigma). Made up on the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>whole-mount pH 9.5 NTMT</strong></td>
<td>100mM NaCl (BDH), 100mM Tris-HCL (pH 9.5), 50mM MgCl₂ (BDH), 1% Tween-20 (Sigma). Made up on the day it was to be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10x Salts</strong></td>
<td>114g NaCl (BDH), 14.04g Trizma® HCL (Sigma), 1.34g Trizma® base minimum (Sigma), 7.1g NaH₂PO₄.2H₂O (BDH), 0.5M EDTA (Sigma) in 1L ddH₂O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cryostat hybridisation buffer</strong></td>
<td>1x Salts, 50% formamide (Sigma), 10% dextran sulphate (Fluka), 250µg/ml Yeast tRNA (Ambion), 1x Denhardt’s (Fluka).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cryostat washing solution</strong></td>
<td>1x SSC pH7 (Sigma), 50% formamide (Sigma) 0.1% Tween-20 (Sigma).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cryostat pH 8 NTMT</strong></td>
<td>100mM NaCl (BDH), 100mM Tris-HCL (pH8), 50mM MgCl₂ (BDH), 0.1% Tween-20 (Sigma). Made up on the day it was to be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cryostat pH 9.5 NTMT</strong></td>
<td>100mM NaCl (BDH), 100mM Tris-HCL (pH 9.5), 50mM MgCl₂ (BDH), 0.1% Tween-20 (Sigma). Made up on the day it was to be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Staining Solution</strong></td>
<td>cryostat pH 9.5 NTMT with 5% poly(vinyl alcohol) (Sigma) dissolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tyrodes</strong></td>
<td>137.0mM NaCl (BDH), 2.7mM KCl (Sigma), 2.4mM CaCl₂ (Sigma), 2.1mM MgCl₂.6H₂O (BDH), 0.4mM NaH₂PO₄.2H₂O (BDH), 5.6mM glucose (Sigma). Autoclave then add 100U/ml penicillin, 100µg/ml streptomycin, 0.3 µg/ml Fungizone (Gibco).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Slice media</strong></td>
<td>Basal Medium Eagle (Gibco) supplemented with 0.5% D- (+)-glucose (Sigma), 1% I-1884 supplement (Sigma), 2mM L-Glutamine (Sigma), 100U/ml penicillin, 100µg/ml streptomycin, 0.25 µg/ml Fungizone® (Gibco).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10x MEMFA salts</strong></td>
<td>1M MOPS (Sigma), 20mM EGTA (Sigma), 10mM MgSO₄ (Sigma) solution. pH to 7.4 using NaOH pellets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(BDH). Autoclave.

| MEMFA Fix          | 1x MEMFA salts, 3.7% formaldehyde (Sigma). |

6.2 Animals

Fertilised GFP transgenic eggs (gift of Helen Sang, Roslin Institute) and wild type eggs (Henry Stewart, UK) were incubated at 38°C for 3 to 6 days before windowing with sharp surgical scissors. Staging of chick embryos was made according to Hamburger and Hamilton (1951) (labelled as st) or according to the embryonic day of development (labelled as E). The relationship between embryonic day of development and Hamburger and Hamilton stages are detailed in Appendix A. Wild-type embryos were dissected appropriately in PBS using ridged forceps (Fine Science Tools) and fixed and stored in PFA.

6.3 Molecular Biology

6.3.1 Cloning of chairy2ΔWRPW and full length chairy2 from chick cDNA

Total RNA was extracted from E3 chick embryos by TRIzol RNA isolation. This involved isolating the hindbrain, midbrain and forebrain from a st.17 chick embryo in ice-cold PBS then homogenizing it in 1ml TRIzol reagent (Invitrogen) in a 1.5 ml Eppendorf tube. The tube was then centrifuged for 1 min at 12000g to remove cell debris. The supernatant was then transferred to a new 1.5 ml Eppendorf tube. To extract RNA, 0.2ml chloroform (Sigma) was added to 1ml TRIzol Reagent and sample tubes were vortexed for 15 seconds, then incubated for 2 minutes at room temperature. Samples were then centrifuged at 12000g for 15 minutes at 4°C. The upper colourless aqueous phase was isolated and transferred into a new Eppendorf tube. RNA was precipitated by mixing the aqueous solution with 500µl of isopropanol well then incubating the tube at room temperature for 10 minutes, then centrifuging the tube at 12000g for 10 minutes at 4°C. The supernatant was then removed from the RNA pellet and 1ml of 75% ethanol was added to the RNA pellet. The sample was then vortexed and then centrifuged at 7500g for 5 minutes at 4°C. This washing procedure with ethanol was repeated and all ethanol was removed from the RNA pellet. The RNA pellet was air-dried for 10 minutes. The RNA pellet was re-suspended in 15µl of RNase-free ddH₂O (Ambion) and 1.5µl of sample was diluted with 6.5µl ddH₂O and 2µl 5x DNA loading buffer (Bioline) and run out on a 1% agarose (Sigma) in TBE (Severn Biotech) gel stained with SYBR Safe DNA gel stain (Invitrogen) alongside 5µl Hyperladder 1 (Bioline) to check for the presence of ribosomal and messenger RNA. The concentration of RNA was measured using a NanoVue Plus Spectrophotometer (GE Healthcare).
First-strand cDNA was synthesised using the SuperScript First-Strand Synthesis System for RT-PCR (Invitrogen) according to the manufacturer’s instructions. Briefly, an RNA/primer mixture was created by mixing 1µg total RNA with 1µl of 10mM dNTP mix and 1µl of 0.5µg/µl Oligo(dT)$_{12,18}$ in 10µl ddH$_2$O. This mix was heated to 65°C for 5mins then cooled for 1 min on ice. The reaction mixture was created by mixing 2µl of 10x reverse transcription buffer with 4µl of 25mM MgCl$_2$, 2µl of 0.1M DTT and 1µl of RNaseOUT Recombinant RNase inhibitor. This mixture was added to the RNA/primer mixture and mixed by centrifugation for 1 min at 12000g. The mixture was then incubated at 42°C for 2mins before 1µl of SuperScript II reverse transcriptase was added to the reaction. The reaction was then incubated for 50mins at 42°C. The reaction was terminated by incubating at 70°C for 15mins and then chilled on ice. 1µl of RNaseH was added to the reaction for 20mins at 37°C to remove RNA.

*chairy2ΔWRPW* and full length *chairy2* were then amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR). 2µl of the cDNA reaction was mixed with 5µl of 10X AccuPrime Pfx Reaction Mix (Invitrogen), 1µl each of 10µM forward and reverse primers, 40.6µl of ddH$_2$O and 0.4µl of AccuPrime Pfx DNA Polymerase (Invitrogen). The forward primer used was 5’ ATTGCGGCCGATGCCTGCGACCTGAGG 3’ and the reverse primer used was 5’ TGAATTCTGACCAGGCGCTCCAGACTG 3’ for full length *chairy2* and 5’ TGAATTCTCAGACTGAGTCAGCGGTG 3’ for *chairy2ΔWRPW* (primers were ordered from Sigma). PCR amplification was achieved by subjecting the reaction to the following conditions: The template was denatured by heating to 95°C for 2mins then 25–35 cycles of PCR amplification followed by heating the reaction to 95°C for 15secs, annealing was allowed by heating at 60°C for 30secs, then extension of DNA was allowed by heating at 68°C for 1min. The reaction was then chilled to 4°C. The PCR reaction was then checked by running 5µl of PCR product mixed with 2µl 5x DNA loading buffer (Bioline) and 4µl ddH$_2$O, out on a 1% agarose (Sigma) in TBE (Severn Biotech) gel stained with SYBR Safe DNA gel stain (Invitrogen) alongside 5µl Hyperladder 1 (Bioline). The PCR product was purified using an illustra GFX PCR DNA and Gel Band purification kit (GE Healthcare) as per the manufacturer’s instructions.

6.3.2 Restriction enzyme digestion of PCR products and receptive pBluescript II KS+ vector

The PCR products were transferred into pBluescript II KS+ (Agilent) by first digesting the PCR products and the plasmid with the restriction enzymes NotI and EcoR1. For the PCR product this was carried out by mixing 49µl of the PCR product with 6µl of Buffer H (Roche) and 2.5µl each of the enzymes NotI and EcoR1 (Roche). For the plasmid this was
carried out by mixing 5µg of plasmid with 6µl of Buffer H (Roche) and 2.5µl each of the enzymes Not1 and EcoR1 (Roche) in a total volume of 60µl of ddH2O. Digestion reaction mixtures were incubated for two hours at 37°C. Reaction products were mixed with 12µl of 5x DNA loading buffer (Bioline) and run out on a 1% agarose (Sigma) in TBE (Severn Biotech) gel stained with ethidium bromide, alongside 5µl Hyperladder 1 (Bioline) overnight at 25V. The correct bands were isolated and purified using an illustra GFX PCR DNA and Gel Band purification kit (GE Healthcare).

6.3.3 Ligation reaction and mini-preparation of DNA constructs
2µl of purified, digested inserts and 2µl of the purified, digested plasmid were mixed with 2µl of 5x DNA loading buffer (Bioline) and 6µl of ddH2O then run out on a 1% agarose (Sigma) in TBE (Severn Biotech) gel stained with ethidium bromide, alongside 5µl Hyperladder 1 (Bioline) to gauge the relative concentration and sizes of the inserts and plasmid. The appropriate volumetric ratio to mix the purified, digested insert solution with the purified, digested plasmid so that the relative nucleotide concentration was equal was subsequently determined. Thus the appropriate volumes of purified, digested inserts and plasmids were mixed with 1.5µl ligation buffer (Roche) and 1.3µl T4 DNA ligase (Roche) in a total volume of 15µl ddH2O and the ligation reaction was incubated overnight at 16°C. As a control the same volume as the reaction above of purified, digested plasmid solution was incubated with 1.5µl ligation buffer (Roche) and 1.3µl T4 DNA ligase (Roche) in a total volume of 15µl ddH2O overnight at 16°C. One shot Top10 chemically competent E. Coli (Invitrogen) were then transformed with 3µl of each ligation reaction according to the manufacturer’s instructions, and the resulting transformed cells were plated out on LB agar (Sigma) plates containing 100µg/ml ampicillin (Sigma). Transformed cells were grown overnight at 37°C. 10 colonies were then picked and grown overnight at 37°C, shaking at 213rpm in 3ml LB (Sigma) containing 100µg/ml ampicillin (Sigma). Plasmid DNA was purified from overnight cultures using a QIAprep Spin MiniPrep Kit (Qiagen) according to the manufacturer’s instructions. A diagnostic restriction digest was then carried out by mixing 5µl of each miniprep with 2µl Buffer H (Roche) and 0.8µl of both EcoR1 (Roche) and Not1 (Roche) in a total volume of 20µl ddH2O, and incubating for two hours at 37°C. 4µl of 5x DNA loading buffer (Bioline) was then added to each diagnostic reaction and the solution was run out on a 1% agarose (Sigma) in TBE (Severn Biotech) gel stained with SYBR Safe DNA gel stain (1:10000; Invitrogen), alongside 10µl purified, digested plasmid solution mixed with 4µl of 5x DNA loading buffer (Bioline) and 8µl ddH2O, and 5µl Hyperladder 1 (Bioline).
6.3.4 Sequencing of chairy2 and chairy2ΔWRPW
From this diagnostic restriction reaction, three miniprep clones seen to contain the correct size insert were sent for sequencing (Eurofins). The correct sequences for chairy2 and chairy2ΔWRPW were verified for all clones and are shown in Appendix D and E respectively.

6.3.5 Construction of the chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5 and chairy2-IRESeGFPm5 constructs
5µg of pBluescript II KS+chairy2ΔWRPW, pBluescript II KS+chairy2 and the pCAβ-IRESeGFPm5 vector (Andree et al., 2009) (see Appendix C for explanation of abbreviations) were digested with EcoR1 and Not1 by mixing with 6µl Buffer H (Roche) and 2µl each of EcoR1 and Not1 (Roche) in a total volume of 60µl ddH2O, and incubating at 37°C for two hours. 12µl of 5x DNA loading buffer (Bioline) was added to each reaction and the reaction was run out on a 1% agarose (Sigma) TBE (Severn Biotech) gel stained with ethidium bromide overnight at 25V. The appropriate DNA bands for chairy2ΔWRPW, chairy2 and linearized pCAβ-IRESeGFPm5 vector were isolated and purified using an illustra GFX PCR DNA and Gel Band purification kit (GE Healthcare). A diagnostic gel to determine the relative size and concentration of inserts and plasmid was then run as described above in ‘Ligation reaction and mini-preparation of DNA constructs’. Ligation reactions and subsequent mini-preparation of constructs was then carried out as described above in ‘Ligation reaction and mini-preparation of DNA constructs’.

6.3.6 Amplification of DNA constructs
Mini-prepared DNA solutions were used to transform Subcloning Efficiency 5-alpha competent E. coli (NEB) according to the manufacturer’s instructions. The resulting transformed cells were plated out on appropriately selective LB agar (Sigma) plates. Transformed cells were grown overnight at 37°C. Individual colonies were then picked and used to inoculate 3ml of appropriately selective LB (Sigma). This starter culture was grown for 8 hours at 37°C, shaking at 213rpm and was then diluted in the appropriate volume of selective LB (Sigma) at a 1:500 ratio. This culture was grown overnight at 37°C, shaking at 213rpm, then DNA was purified using either a QIAfilter Plasmid Midi Kit (Qiagen) or a QIAfilter Plasmid Maxi Kit (Qiagen), according to the manufacturer’s instructions.

6.3.7 Generation of antisense riboprobes for in situ hybridisation
DNA in situ plasmids (listed in Appendix B) were linearized with the appropriate restriction endonuclease (Roche) by incubating 10µg of DNA with 10U of enzyme and the appropriate buffer in a 30µl volume for 2 hours. Linearized plasmid was then purified using an illustra GFX PCR DNA and Gel Band purification kit (GE Healthcare). 1µg of linearized plasmid
was then incubated with 30U of the appropriate RNA polymerase (Roche) in a 20µl *in vitro* transcription reaction (1x transcription buffer (Roche), 20U Protector RNase inhibitor (Roche)) with either 1x DIG RNA labelling mix or 1x fluorescein RNA labelling mix (Roche), for 2 hours at 37°C. DNA was then removed from the reaction by incubation for 45 min at 37°C with 10U DNAase 1 (Roche). This reaction was quenched by the addition of 42mM EDTA, pH8 (Ambion). Success of the reaction was checked by running 2µl of the reaction diluted with 2 µl ddH₂O and 1µl 5x DNA loading buffer (Bioline) out on a 1% agarose (Sigma) in TBE (Severn Biotech) gel stained with SYBR Safe DNA gel stain (Invitrogen) alongside 5µl Hyperladder 1 (Bioline). RNA probe solutions were then purified using illustra Microspin G50 Columns (GE Healthcare). RNA concentration was quantified using a NanoVue Plus Spectrophotometer (GE Healthcare).

6.4 Histological techniques

6.4.1 Cryostat sectioning

Wild type embryos stored in 4% PFA were washed in PBS three times for 15 minutes. Embryos were then perfused with 30% sucrose (Sigma) in PBS overnight at 4°C. Embryos were then perfused for 1 hour at 4°C in OCT compound. Embryos were then transferred into approximately 1.5ml of fresh OCT compound in a mould made from foil and oriented as desired. Embryos were frozen by placing on a 10cm petri dish floating on liquid nitrogen. 20µm serial transverse sections were cut using a cryostat (Zeiss Microm HM 560) and collected on SuperFrost® Plus slides. Sections were allowed to air-dry for 2 hours and were then transferred into a –80°C freezer for storage.

6.4.2 Vibrotome sectioning

Embryos that had been in through the *in situ* hybridisation process were embedded in 20% gelatine (Fluka) in PBS by first washing the embryos in PBS three times for 10mins at room temperature, then placing embryos into pre-warmed 20% gelatine in PBS for 1.5hrs at 65°C or until they sink. Embryos were then transferred in 20% gelatine in PBS into moulds and embryos were oriented as desired. Blocks were set by cooling on an ice block and then storing in the fridge for 2 hours. Blocks were then cut to the appropriate size using a razor blade and were fixed in PFA for 2 days.

To section the embryos, blocks were washed three times for 15mins in PBS at room temperature then glued to the chuck of a vibrotome (Leica VT1000S) using superglue. The block and chuck were bathed in PBS and 40µm sections were cut and mounted on Polysine slides. Excess PBS was removed from sections and sections were mounted under a coverslip in 90% glycerol (MP) in PBS. Slides were sealed using nail varnish (Boots).
6.4.3 RNA *in situ* hybridisation

6.4.3.1 Whole mount *in situ* hybridisation

Wild type embryos, cultured explants or embryos that had been electroporated were subjected to whole-mount double *in situ* hybridisation. Embryos stored in PFA were washed and dissected appropriately in PBS. Embryos were then washed overnight in PBTw at 4°C, then were gradually dehydrated by washing in 25%, 50%, 75% methanol in PBTw and finally in 100% methanol for 5 min each. Embryos were then re-hydrated gradually by washing in 75%, 50% then 25% methanol in PBTw and finally in PBTw for 5 min each. Embryos were then washed twice for 20 min in Detergent mix then post-fixed for 20 min in PFA with 25% glutaraldehyde (Sigma). Embryos are then washed twice in PBTw prior to pre-hybridisation in whole-mount hybridisation buffer at 70°C for 1 hour. Hybridisation of riboprobes took place overnight at 70°C by incubation of embryos in whole-mount hybridisation buffer with 1µg/ml DIG- or fluorescien-lablled riboprobe. After hybridisation, embryos were washed in pre-warmed Solution X at 70°C twice for 5 min, then twice for 30 min. Embryos were then washed for 10 min in 50% Solution X in MABT, prior to being washed four times in MABT at room temperature for 20 min per wash. Embryos were then blocked for 1 – 2 hours in blocking solution prior to being incubated overnight at 4°C with an alkaline phosphatase- conjugated anti-flourescein antibody (for double *in situ*) or an alkaline phosphatase- conjugated anti-DIG antibody (for single *in situ*) (1:2000, Roche) in blocking solution. Embryos were then rinsed 3 times in MABT then washed four times for 10 min, then once for 30 min in MABT, then overnight at 4°C in MABT. Then a red signal was developed to detect antibody bound to fluorescein-labelled probes, and a blue signal was developed to detect antibody bound to DIG-labelled probes.

The red signal was developed by washing embryos in whole-mount pH 8 NTMT twice for 10 min prior to the colour reaction. For the colour reaction one Fast-Red (Sigma) tablet was dissolved per 12ml whole-mount pH8 NTMT and embryos were then incubated with the Fast-Red substrate at 4°C in the dark until an appropriate level of red signal had developed. Embryos were washed overnight at 4°C in MABT to allow the colour reaction to be carried out again the next day. To stop the colour reaction, embryos were washed three times for 5 min in PBS (Phosphate buffered saline), then were treated with 5mM EDTA (Ambion) in PBS for 1 hour at 70°C, then rinsed twice in PBS prior to fixation overnight at 4°C in PFA.

To develop the blue signal embryos were washed twice for 10min in whole-mount pH 9.5 NTMT. The colour reaction was carried out by incubating embryos with NBT/BCIP mix (Roche) (5µl/ml in whole-mount pH 9.5 NTMT) at room temperature in the dark. After the appropriate level of blue signal was achieved the colour reaction was stopped by washing
embryos for 10 min in whole-mount pH9.5 NTMT, then washing twice for 10 min in PBTw, then twice for 5 min in PBS, prior to storage of embryos in PFA at 4°C.

For double in situ, after the red signal was developed and stopped, embryos were washed four times in MABT at room temperature for 20 min per wash. Embryos were then blocked for 1 – 2 hours in Block prior to being incubated overnight at 4°C with alkaline phosphatase-conjugated anti-DIG antibody (1:2000; Roche) in Block. Embryos were then rinsed 3 times in MABT then washed four times for 10 min, then once for 30 min in MABT, then overnight at 4°C in MABT. The blue signal was then developed and the reaction stopped as described above.

6.4.3.2 In situ hybridisation on cryostat sections.

Cryostat sections were defrosted for 30 min then washed for 10 min in PBS to dissolve OCT. Riboprobes in cryostat hybridisation buffer were prepared by diluting 1µg/ml of riboprobe in cryostat hybridisation buffer and heating at 70°C for 10 min. Sections were then incubated overnight in the riboprobe mix under a coverslip at 70°C in a sealed box in the presence of Whatman filter paper wetted with a solution of 1x Salts/50% Formamide (Sigma). Slides were then washed in pre-warmed cryostat washing solution at 70°C firstly for 15 minutes to allow coverslips to fall off, then twice for 30 minutes. Slides were then washed three times for 30 min in MABT then blocked by incubating in blocking solution for 1hr in a humidified chamber. Slides were then incubated overnight at room temperature in a humidified chamber with an alkaline phosphatase-conjugated anti-fluorescein antibody (for double in situ) or an alkaline phosphatase-conjugated anti-DIG antibody (for single in situ) (1:2000; Roche) in blocking solution. The next day slides were washed with MABT four times at room temperature for 20 min then overnight at 4°C in MABT. Then a red signal was developed to detect antibody bound to fluorescein-labelled probes, and a blue signal was developed to detect antibody bound to DIG-labelled probes.

The red signal was developed by washing slides in cryostat pH 8 NTMT twice for 10 min prior to the colour reaction. For the colour reaction one Fast-Red (Sigma) tablet was dissolved per 12ml cryostat pH8 NTMT and slides were then incubated with the Fast-Red substrate at 4°C in the dark until an appropriate level of red signal had developed. Slides were washed overnight at 4°C in MABT to allow the colour reaction to be carried out again the next day. To stop the colour reaction, Slides were washed three times for 5 min in PBS (Phosphate buffered saline), then were treated with 5mM EDTA (Ambion) in PBS for 15 min at 70°C, and then washed in PBS overnight at 4°C.

To develop the blue signal slides were washed twice for 10min in cryostat pH 9.5 NTMT. The colour reaction was carried out by incubating sections with NBT/BCIP mix (Roche)
(20µl/ml in Staining Solution) at room temperature in the dark. After the appropriate level of blue signal was achieved the colour reaction was stopped by washing slides twice for 10 min in PBS with 0.25% Triton X-100 (Alfa Aesar) and 2mM EDTA (Ambion), then once for 5 min in PBS, then post-fixed with PFA. Slides were then rinsed twice for 5 min in PBS and mounted in 90% glycerol (MP) in PBS. Coverslips were sealed with nail polish (Boots).

For double in situ, after the red signal was developed and stopped, slides were washed three times in MABT at room temperature for 30 min per wash. Sections were then blocked by incubating in blocking solution for 1hr in a humidified chamber. Slides were then incubated overnight at room temperature in a humidified chamber with an alkaline phosphatase-conjugated anti-DIG antibody (1:2000; Roche) in blocking solution. The next day slides were washed with MABT four times at room temperature for 20 min then overnight at 4°C in MABT. The blue signal was then developed and the reaction stopped as described above.

6.4.4 Immunohistochemical Staining

6.4.4.1 Whole-mount
Cultured explants and electroporated embryos were washed in PBS for 60 min to remove PFA. Embryos were then washed twice for 30 min in PBS with 1% Triton X-100 (PBSTrit), then blocked by washing three times for 60 min in 5% neonatal calf serum (NCS; Sigma) in PBSTrit. Embryos were then exposed to the primary antibody, rabbit anti-GFP, IgG (1:150; Invitrogen) in 10% NCS/ PBSTrit for 2 - 3 nights at 4°C. The primary antibody was then washed off with four times 60 min washes in 1% goat serum (GS; Sigma) in PBSTrit and the embryos were exposed overnight at 4°C to the secondary antibody, Alexa Fluor 488 – conjugated goat anti – rabbit IgG (1:1000; Invitrogen; highly cross-adsorbed) in 1% GS/ PBSTrit. Embryos were then washed three times for 10 minutes in PBS then incubated for one hour at room temperature with Alexa Fluor 488 – conjugated goat anti – rabbit IgG (1:1000; Invitrogen; highly cross-adsorbed) in 5% GS in PBSTw. Embryos are then washed four times for 10 minutes in PBS and mounted in 90% glycerol (MP) in PBS under a coverslip. Slides are sealed with nail polish (Boots).
6.5 Explant co-cultures

E4, E5 or E6 GFP – transgenic chick embryos and stage matched wild type chick embryos were dissected in Tyrodes solution to isolate the hindbrains or spinal cords from the anterior limb-bud level. Hindbrains were flat-mounted as illustrated in Figure 3-2 and the roof plate epithelium including the gdf7-domain (the most dorsal region of neuroepithelium that is removed when roof plate epithelium is dissected away) is removed. Most of the gdf7-domain is accurately removed by this method as evidenced by in situ hybridisation performed on hindbrains after 0hrs incubation (Figure 3-10). To assess the requirement for the roof plate for the maintenance of cath1 in the rhombic lip, roof plate epithelium including the gdf7 domain was only removed from one side of the flat-mounted hindbrain. For co-cultures, rhombic lips (estimated as the dorsal third of the neural tube to be sure of complete removal) from both sides of the hindbrains were either removed or left intact as indicated. For co-cultures involving spinal cord, spinal cords were flat-mounted and the dorsal 1/3rd of the neural tube was removed using a flame-sharpened tungsten wire (0.1mm). Pieces of roof plate epithelium (isolated as illustrated in Figure 3-2) were cultured adjacent to the flat-mounted hindbrains either along the dorsal edge of the hindbrain or along the dorsoventral axis of the hindbrain as indicated. Pieces of roof plate epithelium were cultured along the dorsal cut edge of the flat-mounted spinal cords. Alternatively, pieces of roof plate epithelium were cultured adjacent to other pieces of roof plate epithelium. Explants were cultured at an air-liquid interface with the pial surface of the hindbrain facing upwards, on 0.4µm culture plate inserts (Millicell – CM, Millipore) that had been placed in 3mls of sterile slice media that had been pre-warmed to 37°C, with 6% CO2, in a 60mm tissue culture dish (Nunc). Explants were cultured for 48 hours at 37°C with CO2 maintained at 6% in a Sanyo CO2 incubator, then fixed by replacing the 3ml slice media with 3ml 4% PFA and leaving the plates for 30 minutes at room temperature. 4% PFA was then applied directly to the explant tissue and left for a further 30 minutes at room temperature. The area of Millipore Membrane that contained the explanted hindbrains was cut out using a scalpel and the whole membrane was then stored in 4% PFA prior to processing by whole mount in situ hybridisation.

6.6 Microsurgical transplantation

Wild-type host eggs that had been incubated at 38°C to E3 were windowed and yolks underlying embryos were injected with Fount India ink (Pelikan). E4 GFP-transgenic embryos were dissected in Tyrodes to isolate and flat-mount hindbrains. Flame-sharpened tungsten wire (0.1mm) was also used to dissect out small pieces of roof plate epithelium from flat-mounted hindbrains. Pieces of rhombic lip were isolated by removing the roof plate
epithelium and gdf7-domain as illustrated in Figure 3-1-1, and then dissecting off small squares of rhombic lip (the dorsal-most neuroepithelium) using a flame-sharpened tungsten wire. The pieces of roof plate epithelium or rhombic lip tissue were grafted into the wild-type E3 embryo by first removing the vitelline membranes of the host embryo and cutting a receptive hole in either the roof plate epithelium, dorsal rhombomere 1 or the midbrain using flame-sharpened tungsten wire. The piece of donor tissue was then transferred into the receptive hole using a Gilson pipette coated in GS (Sigma) and flame-sharpened tungsten wire for fine manipulations. The host eggs were then incubated at 38°C for 24 hours.

6.7 In ovo electroporation

Eggs that had been incubated at 38°C were windowed and yolks underlying embryonic day 3 (E3, st16 – st17) embryos were injected with Fount India ink (Pelikan) diluted 1 in 5 in Tyrodes solution to generate visual contrast. Ink was not used for E4 (st21 – st24) embryos. The vitelline membranes were removed using ridged forceps (Fine Science Tools) and DNA constructs were injected into the fourth ventricle. DNA constructs (listed in Appendix C) were diluted to 1-2 µg/µl and mixed with trace amounts of fast green (Sigma) prior to injection. Where constructs were co-electroporated they were mixed together so that they were mixed at a 1:1 concentration ratio and the final concentration of each construct was 1.0 µg/µl, prior to injection. The negative electrode was placed to the left of the neural tube and the positive electrode placed to the right at the hindbrain level to target the site of electroporation. Three 50 ms/10 V square waveform electrical pulses were passed between electrodes so that DNA entered the right side of the neural tube or roof plate epithelium. Eggs were then sealed and incubated at 38°C until E5 when embryos were harvested and either fixed in PFA at 4°C, MEMFA Fix at 4°C for embryos co-electroporated with CAβ-GFP and RCAS-RFP, or processed for LysoTracker staining.

6.8 LysoTracker staining

Electroporated embryos collected in PBS were organised into 12-well plates with 250µl of PBS in each well. 250µl of LysoTracker Red DND99 stain (Invitrogen; 10µM in PBS) was added to each well so that the final concentration of LysoTracker Red was 5µM. The 12-well plate was covered in foil and incubated at 37°C for 30 minutes. Embryos were then rinsed five times for 5 min with PBS then embryos were fixed in MEMFA Fix.

6.9 Imaging and image processing

‘Flat-mounted hindbrains’ indicate that hindbrains dissected in PBS were dissected along the dorsal midline and mounted pial side up on Polysine slides. ‘Flat-mounted roof plates’
indicate that dissected hindbrains were dissected along the ventral midline and mounted on Polysine slides with either the pial or the ventricular surface upwards. Silicon grease was then used to support a coverslip and flat-mounted brains were mounted in 90% glycerol (MP) in PBS. Cultured explants that had been through the in situ hybridisation procedure were washed in PBS and removed from Millipore Membranes, then mounted on Polysine slides in 90% glycerol (MP) in PBS under a coverslip.

Low magnification images of whole-mount embryos in PBS, flat-mounted embryos or cultured explants were captured using a Leica stereo photomicroscope fitted with a Leica digital microscope. High magnification images of flat-mounted embryos and cultured explants were captured using a Zeiss Axioplan2 compound microscope fitted with a SPOT Insight Firewire 4 digital camera. Vibrotome and cryostat sections were imaged using a Zeiss Axiophot stereovision compound microscope fitted with a Zeiss AxioCam digital camera. Confocal micrographs were collected using an Olympus Fluoview AX70 and images shown are projections of z-stacks or an individual optical section as indicated. Optical sections in z-stacks were taken at 5µm intervals. All images were processed using Photoshop 6.0 (Adobe).

6.10 Cell counting and statistical analysis

The number of cells co-expressing GFP and RFP were counted out of the total number of electroporated cells in a confocal optical section using the Cell Counter plug-in for ImageJ (NIH). The percentage of cells co-expressing GFP and RFP, only expressing RFP or only expressing GFP was worked out. This was carried out for four optical sections derived from two electroporated embryos and means and standard errors of the means were calculated using Excel 2010 (Microsoft).

The number of dead cells per mm$^2$ was calculated by counting the total number of dead cells in an area of 70 – 100 µm$^2$ within the electroporated domain or in a similar region of the un-electroporated side of the flat-mounted hindbrain, in projections of z-stacks of optical sections, using ImageJ (NIH) software. Hence the number of dead cells per mm$^2$ was calculated for both the electroporated domain and a similar region of the un-electroporated side of the flat-mounted hindbrain. The Wilcoxon paired comparison test was used to determine the significance of differences in the extent of cell death between the electroporated and un-electroporated side of hindbrains electroporated with CAβ-GFP or chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5 (n=3 for both). After the amount of cell death on the un-electroporated side is subtracted from the amount on the electroporated side, the Man-Whitney test was used to test the significance of differences between electroporation with
CAβ-GFP and electroporation with *chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5* (n=3 for both). For all statistical tests a 5% significance level was chosen to denote significance.
Appendix A

Relationship between embryonic day (E) and Hamburger and Hamilton (1951) stages (st).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Embryonic Day</th>
<th>Hamburger and Hamilton Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E2</td>
<td>st10 – st13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.5</td>
<td>st14 – st15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3</td>
<td>st16 – st19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E4</td>
<td>st20 – st24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E5</td>
<td>st25 – st27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E6</td>
<td>st28 – st29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E7</td>
<td>st30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix B

Plasmids for the generation of RNA in situ hybridisation riboprobes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Cut:</th>
<th>Transcribe with:</th>
<th>Obtained from/ Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bmp4</td>
<td>BamH1</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>(Graham et al., 1994)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bmp7</td>
<td>Xho1</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>(Begbie et al., 1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash1</td>
<td>EcoR1</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>Alessio Delogu, KCL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cath1</td>
<td>Not1</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>(Wilson and Wingate, 2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyp26C1</td>
<td>Sal1</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>(Reijntjes et al., 2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delta1</td>
<td>EcoR1</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>(Myat et al., 1996)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdf7</td>
<td>Not1</td>
<td>SP6</td>
<td>Anthony Graham, KCL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chairy1</td>
<td>Hind3</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>Jon Gilthorpe, Umea University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chairy2</td>
<td>Hind3</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>Jon Gilthorpe, Umea University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ifng</td>
<td>Cla1</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>(Laufer et al., 1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notch1</td>
<td>Hind3</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>(Myat et al., 1996)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notch2</td>
<td>Hind3</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>(le Roux et al., 2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otx2</td>
<td>Not1</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>(Millet et al., 1996)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serrate1</td>
<td>Hind3</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>(Myat et al., 1996)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ttr</td>
<td>Nco1</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>(Duan et al., 1991)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wnt1</td>
<td>EcoR1</td>
<td>T7</td>
<td>(Hollyday et al., 1995)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix C

List of DNA constructs used in electroporation studies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electroporation construct</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RCAS-RFP</td>
<td>Wingate lab (unpublished). Made by replacing eGFP with RFP from the RCASBP(B)-eGFP construct (Gilthorpe et al., 2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAβ-GFP</td>
<td>pCAβ-eGFPm5 (Yaneza et al., 2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCAS-delta1</td>
<td>(Henrique et al., 1997).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chairy2ΔWRPWv1-IRESeGFPm5</td>
<td>gift from J. Gilthorpe, Umea University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chairy2ΔWRPWv2-IRESeGFPm5</td>
<td>this study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chairy2-IRESeGFPm5</td>
<td>this study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explanation of abbreviations used to describe constructs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RCAS</td>
<td>Replication-Competent with an ALV long terminal repeat (LTR) with a Splice acceptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCASBP(B)</td>
<td>As above but BP stands for Bryan Polymerase and (B) indicates the type of env gene in the vector.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pCAβ</td>
<td>Refers to a vector containing the cytomegalovirus enhancer and chicken β-Actin promoter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRES</td>
<td>Internal Ribosome Entry Site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix D

**Full length cHairy2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ATG</th>
<th>CCT</th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>GAC</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>GAG</th>
<th>AGG</th>
<th>AGC</th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>TCG</th>
<th>CGG</th>
<th>GTG</th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>45</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>ACC</th>
<th>CCC</th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>AGC</th>
<th>TTC</th>
<th>TTC</th>
<th>AAA</th>
<th>CCC</th>
<th>ATG</th>
<th>GAG</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>CCC</th>
<th>AAA</th>
<th>ACG</th>
<th>90</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GCG</th>
<th>GGG</th>
<th>GAG</th>
<th>CAC</th>
<th>CGG</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>GTC</th>
<th>TCC</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>CCC</th>
<th>GCT</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>ACG</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>135</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CGG</th>
<th>CGG</th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>ATC</th>
<th>AAC</th>
<th>GAG</th>
<th>AGG</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>ATG</th>
<th>GAG</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>CGG</th>
<th>180</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>K</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ATC</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>GAC</th>
<th>GCG</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>GAT</th>
<th>ATG</th>
<th>TCG</th>
<th>CGG</th>
<th>CAC</th>
<th>TCC</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>225</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GAG</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>GAC</th>
<th>ATC</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>GAG</th>
<th>ATG</th>
<th>ACC</th>
<th>GTC</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>CAC</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>CGG</th>
<th>AGC</th>
<th>270</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>CAG</th>
<th>CGG</th>
<th>GCG</th>
<th>CAG</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>ACC</th>
<th>GCT</th>
<th>GCG</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>AGC</th>
<th>ACA</th>
<th>GAC</th>
<th>CCT</th>
<th>ACG</th>
<th>315</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GTG</th>
<th>CTG</th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>TAC</th>
<th>CGC</th>
<th>GCC</th>
<th>GCG</th>
<th>TTC</th>
<th>AGC</th>
<th>AAG</th>
<th>TGC</th>
<th>TAC</th>
<th>AAC</th>
<th>GAA</th>
<th>360</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|     | GTG   | ACG   | CGG   | TTC   | CTC   | TCC   | ACC   | TGC   | GAA   | GGC   | GTC   | AAC   | GCT   | GAG   | GTG   | 405  |

|     |-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| 361 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |------|
121  V  T  R  F  L  S  T  C  E  G  V  N  A  E  V  
406  CGC  ACC  CGG  CTC  CTG  GGC  CAC  CTG  GCC  AGC  TGC  ATG  ACC  CAG  ATC  
136  R  T  R  L  L  G  H  L  A  S  C  M  T  Q  I  
451  AAC  GCC  ATC  AAC  TAC  CCC  GTG  CCG  CCC  CCG  CCG  CTG  CCA  CCC  CCA  
151  N  A  I  N  Y  P  V  P  P  P  L  P  P  P  
456  CGC  ACC  CGG  CTC  CTG  GGC  CAC  CTG  GCC  AGC  TGC  ATG  ACC  CAG  ATC  
166  P  A  A  F  G  P  P  L  V  P  P  G  G  G  A  
496  AAC  GCC  ATC  AAC  TAC  CCC  GTG  CCG  CCC  CCG  CCG  CTG  CCA  CCC  CCA  
181  G  P  L  P  A  V  P  C  K  P  G  A  D  A  A  
541  GGG  CCG  CTC  CCA  GCC  GTA  CCC  TGC  AAG  CCA  GGT  GCC  GAT  GCG  GCC  
186  G  P  L  P  A  V  P  C  K  P  G  A  D  A  A  
586  AAG  GTG  TAC  GGT  GGT  TTC  CAG  CTG  CTG  CCT  GCC  TCT  GAT  GGG  CAG  
191  K  V  Y  G  G  F  Q  L  L  P  A  S  D  G  Q  
631  TTC  GCC  TTC  CTC  ATC  CCC  AGC  GCT  GCC  TTT  GCT  CCC  GGC  GGG  GCT  
196  F  A  F  L  I  P  S  A  A  F  A  P  G  G  A  
676  GTG  CTG  CCC  CTC  TAT  GGC  GGT  CCC  CCC  ACA  GCT  GCC  ACC  ACC  GCC  
201  V  L  P  L  Y  G  G  P  P  T  A  A  T  T  A  
721  TCG  CCT  CCC  GGC  CCC  TCA  CCC  GGC  ACC  GCT  GAC  TCA  GTC  TGG  AGG  
206  S  P  P  G  P  S  P  G  T  A  D  S  V  W  R  
766  CCC  TGG  TGA  
256  P  W  *
### Appendix E

**cHairy2ΔWRPW**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Amino Acid</th>
<th>Position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ATG CCT GCC GAC CTG ATG GAG AGC AGC GCC TCG CCG GTG GCC</td>
<td>M P A D L M E K S S A S P V A</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCC ACC CCC GCC AGC ATC AAC GCG ACG CCC GAT AAG CCC AAA ACG</td>
<td>AT P A S IN A T P D K P K T</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCG GCG GAG CAC CGG AAG TCC TCC AAA CCC ATG GAG AAG CGG</td>
<td>A E H R K S S K P I M E K R</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGG CGG GCG CGC ATC AAC GAG AGC CTG GGG CAG C TG AAG ACG CTG</td>
<td>R R A R I N E S L G Q L K T L</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATC CTG GAC GCG CTG AAG GAT AGT TCG CGG CAC TCC AAG CTG</td>
<td>I L D A L K K D S S R H S K L</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAG AAG GCC GAC ATC CTG GAG ATG ACC GTC AAG CAC CTG CGG AGC</td>
<td>E K A D I L E M T V K H L R S</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTG CAG CGG GCG CAG ATG ACC GCT GCG CTG AGC A CA GAC CCT ACG</td>
<td>L Q R A Q M T A A L S T D P T</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTG CTG GGC AAG TAC CGC GCC GCC TTC AGC GAG TGC ATG AAC GAA</td>
<td>V L G K Y R A G F S E C M N E</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTG ACG CGG TTC CTC TCC ACC TGC GAA GGC GTC AAC GCT GAG GTG</td>
<td></td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
121 V T R F L S T C E G V N A E V 135

406 CGC ACC CGG CTC CTG GCC CAC CTG GCC AGC TGC ATG ACC CAG ATC 450

136 R T R L L G H L A S C M T Q I 150

451 AAC GCC ATC AAC TAC CCC GTG CCG CCC CCG CTGCCA CCC CCA 495

151 N A I N Y P V P P P P L P P P 165

496 CCC GCA GCC TTC GGG CCG CCC CTC GTG CCG GCC GGA GGC GCG 540

166 P A A F G P P L V P P G G A 180

541 GGG CCG CTC CCA GCC GTA CCC TGC AAG CCA GGT G CC GAT GCG GCC 585

181 G P L P A V P C K P G A D A A 195

586 AAG GTG TAC GGT GGT TTC CAG CTG CTG CCT GCC T CT GAT GGG CAG 630

196 K V Y G G F Q L L P A S D G Q 210

631 TTC GCC TTC CTC ATC CCC AGC GCT GCC TTT GCT CCC GCC GGG GCT 675

211 F A F L I P S A A F A P G G A 225

676 GTG CTG CCC CTC TAT GGC GGT CCC CCC ACA GCT GCC ACC ACC GCC 720

226 V L P L Y G G P P T A A T T A 240

721 TCG CCT CCC GGC CCC TCA CCC GGC ACC GCT GAC TCA GTC TGA 762

241 S P P G P S P G T A D S V *
Bibliography


Andreae, L. C., Lumsden, A. and Gilthorpe, J. D. (2009) 'Chick Lrrn2, a novel downstream effector of Hoxb1 and Shh, functions in the selective targeting of rhombomere 4 motor neurons', Neural Dev 4:


Chizhikov, V. V. and Millen, K. J. (2004b) 'Control of roof plate formation by Lmx1a in the developing spinal cord', *Development* 131(11): 2693-705.


Irving, C. and Mason, I. (1999) 'Regeneration of isthmic tissue is the result of a specific and direct interaction between rhombomere 1 and midbrain', *Development* 126(18): 3981-9.


